## MANAGERIAL ECONOMICS

AUTHOR

Dr. SANJIB KUMAR HOTA



CENTER FOR DISTANCE AND ONLINE EDUCATION,

> UTKAL UNIVERSITY, BHUBANESWAR -7

# CENTER FOR DISTANCE \& ONLINE EDUCATION <br> Utkal University, Bhubaneswar-7, Odisha 

Email: helpline@ddceutkal.ac.in
Website: www.ddceutkal.ac.in
© Centre for Distance \& Online Education, Utkal University, Vani Vihar, Bhubaneswar-751007 The study material is developed exclusively for the use of the students admitted under DDCE, Utkal University.

# Name of the Study Material: Managerial Economics 

ISBN :

## Author's Name:

Dr. Sanjib Kumar Hota

Edited by: Dr.TK Satpathy

Year of Print: 2020
No. of Copies: ******
Printed and Published by:
VIKAS ${ }_{\odot}$ PUBLISHING HOUSE PVT LTD
E-28, Sector-8, Noida - 201301 (UP)
Phone: 0120-4078900 Fax: 0120-4078999
Regd. Office: A-27, 2nd Floor, Mohan Co-operative Industrial Estate, New Delhi 110044
Website: www.vikaspublishing.com Email: helpline@vikaspublishing.com
For:
Centre for Distance \& Online Education Utkal University, Bhubaneswar - 751007 www.ddceutkal.ac.in

# CENTER FOR DISTANCE \& ONLINE EDUCATION UTKAL UNIVERSITY : VANI VIHAR BHUBANESWAR:-751007. 

## From the Director's Desk

The Directorate of Distance \& Continuing Education, originally established as the University Evening College way back in 1962 has travelled a long way in the last 52 years. 'EDUCATION FOR ALL' is our motto. Increasingly the Open and Distance Learning institutions are aspiring to provide education for anyone, anytime and anywhere. DDCE, Utkal University has been constantly striving to rise up to the challenges of Open Distance Learning system. Nearly ninety thousand students have passed through the portals of this great temple of learning. We may not have numerous great tales of outstanding academic achievements but we have great tales of success in life, of recovering lost opportunities, tremendous satisfaction in life, turning points in career and those who feel that without us they would not be where they are today. There are also flashes when our students figure in best ten in their honours subjects. In 2014 we have as many as fifteen students within top ten of honours merit list of Education, Sanskrit, English and Public Administration, Accounting and Management Honours. Our students must be free from despair and negative attitude. They must be enthusiastic, full of energy and confident of their future. To meet the needs of quality enhancement and to address the quality concerns of our stake holders over the years, we are switching over to self instructional material printed courseware. Now we have entered into public private partnership to bring out quality SIM pattern courseware. Leading publishers have come forward to share their expertise with us. A number of reputed authors have now prepared the course ware. Self Instructional Material in printed book format continues to be the core learning material for distance learners. We are sure that students would go beyond the course ware provided by us. We are aware that most of you are working and have also family responsibility. Please remember that only a busy person has time for everything and a lazy person has none. We are sure you will be able to chalk out a well planned programme to study the courseware. By choosing to pursue a course in distance mode, you have made a commitment for self improvement and acquiring higher educational qualification. You should rise up to your commitment. Every student must go beyond the standard books and self instructional course material. You should read number of books and use ICT learning resources like the internet, television and radio programmes etc. As only limited number of classes will be held, a student should come to the personal contact programme well prepared. The PCP should be used for clarification of doubt and counseling. This can only happen if you read the course material before PCP. You can always mail your feedback on the course ware to us. It is very important that you discuss the contents of the course materials with other fellow learners.

We wish you happy reading.

|  | MANAGERIAL ECONOMICS |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Block No | Block | Unit No | Unit |
| 1 | Significance and Scope of Managerial Economics | 1 | Role of Managers in Business |
|  |  | 2 | Economic paradigms applicable to business analysis |
| 2 | Market Demand: | 3 | Determinants of Demand and Supply, Elasticity of Demand, |
|  |  | 4 | Indifference Curve Analysis, |
|  |  | 5 | Consumer's Equilibrium Price |
|  |  | 6 | Income and Substitution Effects, |
|  |  | 7 | Demand Forecasting. |
| 3 | Production Function | 8 | Production decision making, |
|  |  | 9 | Short Run Long Run Production Functions. |
| 4 | Market Analysis Profit Analysis | 10 | Cost Structure, Various Cost Concepts Cost Estimation, |
|  |  | 11 | Pricing and Output decisions in Perfect Competition, |
|  |  | 12 | Monopoly, Monopolistic Competition |
|  |  | 13 | Oligopoly |
|  |  | 14 | Theories of Profit |
|  |  | 15 | Break Even Analysis, Managerial Decisions, |
|  |  | 16 | Business Cycle. |

## CENTRE FOR DISTANCE AND ONLINE EDUCATION. UTKAL UNIVERSITY,

## BHUBANESWAR

Program Name: Master in Commerce Program Code: 03030
0Course Name: Managerial Economic

## Course Code: MCM-2.4 Semester: I Credit: 4 Block No. 1 to 4 Unit No. 1 to 16

EXPERT COMMITTEE:

Dr PK Hota
HOD, Dept of Commerce
Utkal University

Dr PK Pradhan Dept of Commerce Utkal University

## COURSE WRITER:

## Dr Sanjib Kumar Hota

Lecturer, MICM
Bhubaneswar

COURSE EDITORS
Dr Biswo Ranjan Mishra
Asst Prof S(II),
CDOE, Utkal University

## REFERENCES

Managerial Economics by S Sankaran

## UNIT-I SIGNIFICANCE AND SCOPE OF MANAGERIAL ECONOMICS

### 1.1 MANAGERIAL ECONOMICS- CONCEPT, NATURE, SCOPE, SIGNIFICANCE AND ROLE IN DECISION MAKING

### 1.1.1 Introduction to Managerial Economics

1.1.2 Scope of Managerial Economics

### 1.1.3 Nature of Managerial Economics

1.1.4 Principles of Managerial Economics
1.1.5 Role of a Managerial Economist
1.1.6 Significance of Managerial Economics
1.1.7 Important Economic Concepts and Terms
1.1.8 Different attributes for Managerial Economic skill Development
1.1.9 Summary
1.1.10 Self-Assessment Questions

## UNIT-2 DEMAND AND CONSUMER BEHAVIOUR

### 2.1 THE DEMAND ANALYSIS

2.1.1 Concepts of Revenue: TR, AR and MR
2.1.2 Relationship between AR (Demand Curve) and MR curve under Perfect competition
2.1.3 Relationship between $\operatorname{AR}$ (Demand curve) and MR curve under imperfect competition
2.1.4 Significance of the Concept of Revenue
2.1.5 Demand-Concept
2.1.6 Determinants of Demand
2.1.7 Law of Demand
2.1.8 Market Demand
2.1.9 Shift in Demand
2.1.10 Elasticity of Demand - concept
2.1.11 Price Elasticity of Demand
2.1.12 Income Elasticity of Demand
2.1.13 Cross Elasticity of Demand
2.1.14 Promotional Elasticity of Demand
2.1.15 Supply Analysis and Market Equilibrium
2.1.16 Demand Forecasting
2.1.17 Summary
2.1.18 Self Assessment Questions
2.2 THE INDIFFERENCE CURVE ANALYSIS
2.2.1 Consumer Behaviour- Introduction
2.2.2 Concept of Indifference Curve and Marginal Rate of Substitution
2.2.3 Properties of Indifference Curve
2.2.4 The Budget Line or Price Line
2.2.5 Consumer's Equilibrium under IC Analysis
2.2.6 Price consumption curve and Price elasticity
2.2.7 Income Consumption Curve and Engle Curve
2.2.8 Price Change and Income and Substitution Effects
2.2.9 Derivation of Individual Demand Curves from IC
2.2.10 Summary
2.2.11 Self Assessment Questions
UNIT-3 PRODUCTION FUNCTION
3.1 PRODUCTION FUNCTION
3.1.1 Production Function
3.1.2 Production Function with one Variable Input (SRPF)
3.1.3 Production Iso-quants \& Marginal Rate of Technical Substitution
3.1.4 Iso-cost Line
3.1.5 The Optimal Combination of Resources (Producers Equilibrium -LRPF)
3.1.6 The Expansion Path
3.1.7 Economic Region of Production
3.1.8 Returns to Scale -Concept
3.1.9 Returns to scale using Iso-quant
3.1.10 Summary
3.1.11 Self-Assessment Questions
Unit-4 MARKET ANALYSIS
4.1 COST OF PRODUCTION
4.1.1 Cost of Production: Social and private costs of production
4.1.2 Short run Cost and Cost Curve
4.1.3 Long run Average Cost Curve and its implications.
4.1.4 Summary
4.1.5 Self Assessment Questions
4.2 PERFECT COMPETITION
4.2.1 Perfect competition: Concept and Assumptions
4.2.2 Demand Curve of a Firm
4.2.3 Supply Curve of Firm and Industry-Short run and Long-run
4.2.4 Equilibrium of the firm in Short-run
4.2.5 Equilibrium of the Industry in Short-run
4.2.6 Equilibrium of the firm in Long-run
4.2.7 Equilibrium of the Industry in Long-run
4.2.8 Measuring producer surplus under perfect competition
4.2.9 Summary
4.2.10 Self Assessment Questions

### 4.3 MONOPOLY

### 4.3.1 Monopoly: Concept

4.3.2 Short-Run Equilibrium under Monopoly
4.3.3 Long-Run Equilibrium under Monopoly
4.3.4 Absence of the Supply Curve in Monopoly
4.3.5 Effect of Shifts in the demand curve in Monopoly
4.3.6 Effect of the change in cost
4.3.7 Measurement of monopoly power and the rule of thumb for pricing,
4.3.8 Horizontal and vertical integration of firms
4.3.9 Differences between Monopoly and Perfect Competition
4.3.10 Summary
4.3.11 Self Assessment Questions

### 4.4 MONOPOLISTIC COMPETITION

4.4.1 Imperfect Competition
4.4.2 Monopolistic competition
4.4.3 Equilibrium of a firm (Short-run)
4.4.4 Equilibrium of a Group (long-run) and economic efficiency
4.4.5 Summary
4.4.6 Self Assessment Questions

### 4.5 OLIGOPOLY

4.5.1 Oligopoly:
4.5.2 Oligopoly and Interdependence (Kinked Demand Curve)
4.5.3 Basic concept of Game Theory
4.5.4 Summary
4.5.5 Self Assessment Questions

## UNIT-5 PROFIT ANALYSIS

5.1 Profit and Theories of Profit

### 5.1.1 Introduction

5.1.2 Theories of profit
5.1.3 Break-even Analysis

### 5.1.4 Summary

### 5.1.5 Self-Assessment Questions

### 5.2 BUSINESS CYCLE

5.2.1 Introduction- Concept of business cycle
5.2.2 Phases of business cycle
5.2.3 Causes of business cycle
5.2.4 Effects of business cycle
5.2.5 Remedial measures of business cycle
5.2.6 Theories of Business cycle
5.2.7 Summary
5.2.8 Self-Assessment Questions

## UNIT-I

## SIGNIFICANCE AND SCOPE OF MANAGERIAL ECONOMICS

### 1.1 CHAPTER

## MANAGERIAL ECONOMICS- CONCEPT, NATURE, SCOPE, SIGNIFICANCE AND ROLE IN DECISION MAKING

## Objectives

After studying this unit, you should be able to:

- understand the concept, nature and scope of managerial economics
- assess the relationship of managerial economics with other disciplines
- discuss why managers need to know economics
- analyze the role of managerial economics in business decision making


## Structure:

1.1.1 Introduction to Managerial Economics
1.1.2 Scope of Managerial Economics
1.1.3 Nature of Managerial Economics
1.1.4 Principles of Managerial Economics
1.1.5 Role of a Managerial Economist
1.1.6 Significance of Managerial Economics
1.1.7 Important Economic Concepts and Terms
1.1.8 Different attributes for Managerial Economic skill Development
1.1.9 Summary
1.1.10 Self-Assessment Questions

### 1.1.1 Introduction to Managerial Economics

Managerial Economics is basically a blend of Economics and Management. Two branches of economics i.e. micro economics and macro economics are the major contributors to managerial economics. Micro Economics is the study of the behaviour of individual consumers and firms whereas microeconomics is the study of economy as a whole.

Managerial Economics serves as a link between economic theories with business practices so as to ease decision-making and future planning by management. Managerial Economics assists the managers of a firm in a rational solution of obstacles faced in the firm's activities. It makes use of economic theory and concepts. It helps in formulating logical managerial decisions. The key of Managerial Economics is the Micro-Economic theory of the firm. Managerial economics can thus be perceived as an Applied Micro Economics.

## Definition of Managerial Economics:

## Some popular definitions are as follows:

"Managerial economics is the integration of economics theory with business practice for the purpose of facilitating decision-making and forward planning by management."-Spencer and

## Siegelman.

"Managerial economics is the use of economics mode of thought to analyze business situation."- McNair and Meriam
"Managerial economics is a fundamental academic subject which seeks to understand and to analyze the problems of business decision-making"' Hague

Managerial Economics is a science dealing with effective use of scarce resources. It guides the managers in taking decisions relating to the firm's customers, competitors, suppliers as well as relating to the internal functioning of a firm. It makes use of statistical and analytical tools to assess economic theories in solving practical business problems.

Study of Managerial Economics helps in enhancement of analytical skills, assists in rational configuration as well as solution of problems. While microeconomics is the study of decisions made regarding the allocation of resources and prices of goods and services, macroeconomics is the field of economics that studies the behaviour of the economy as a whole (i.e. entire industries and economies). Managerial Economics applies micro-economic tools to make business decisions. It deals with a firm.

The use of Managerial Economics is not limited to profit-making firms and organizations. But it can also be used to help in decision-making process of non-profit organizations (hospitals, educational institutions, etc). It enables optimum utilization of scarce resources in such organizations as well as helps in achieving the goals in most efficient manner. Managerial Economics is of great help in price analysis, production analysis, capital budgeting, risk analysis and determination of demand.

The following figure tells the primary ways in which Managerial Economics correlates to managerial decision-making.


### 1.1.2 Scope of Managerial Economics

Managerial Economics deals with allocating the scarce resources in a manner that minimizes the cost. Managerial Economics is different from microeconomics and macro-economics. Managerial Economics has a more narrow scope - it is actually solving managerial issues using micro-economics. Managerial economics ensures that managers make effective and efficient decisions concerning customers, suppliers, competitors as well as within an organization subject to scarce resources by giving rise to three fundamental questions- What to produce?, How to produce?, and For whom to produce?

To answer these questions, a firm makes use of managerial economics principles. The first question relates to what goods and services should be produced and in what amount / quantities. The managers use demand theory for deciding this. The second question relates to how to produce goods and services. The firm has now to choose among different alternative techniques of production. The managers can use various managerial economics tools such as production and cost analysis, project appraisal methods etc for making these crucial decisions. The third question is regarding who should consume and claim the goods and services produced by the firm. The firm, must conduct a thorough analysis of market structure and thus take price and output decisions depending upon the type of market.

In short, managerial economics emphasizes upon the firm, the decisions relating to individual firms and the environment in which the firm operates. Managerial Economics is a great rational and analytical tool. Managerial Economics is not only applicable to profit-making
business organizations, but also to non- profit organizations such as hospitals, schools, government agencies, etc.

Managerial Economics has a close connection with economics theory (micro as well as macro-economic), operations research, statistics, mathematics and the theory of decisionmaking. Managerial Economics also draw together and relates ideas from various functional areas of management like production, marketing, finance \& accounting, project management etc. A professional management economist has to integrate the concept and methods from all these discipline and functional area in order to understand and analyse practical managerial problems. The following aspects thus constitute the subject-matter of managerial economics:

1. Objectives of a Business firm, 2. Demand Analysis and Demand Forecasting, 3. Production and Cost , 4. Competition, 5. Pricing and output, 6. Profit, 7. Investment and Capital Building,8.Product Policy, Sales Promotion andMarket Strategy etc.

### 1.1.3 Nature of Managerial Economics

Managers study managerial economics because it gives them insight to reign the functioning of the organization. If manager uses the principles applicable to economic behaviour in a reasonably, then it will result in smooth functioning of the organisation.

## Managerial Economics is a Science

Managerial Economics can be compared to science in a sense that it fulfils the criteria of being a science in following sense:

- Science is a Systematic body of Knowledge. It is a body of knowledge that determines or observes the internal and external environment for decision making.
- In science any conclusion is arrived at after continuous experimentation. Managerial economist takes decisions by utilizing his valuable past experience and observations.
- Science principles are universally applicable. Similarly policies of Managerial economics are also universally applicable partially if not fully.


## Managerial Economics requires Art

Managerial economist is required to have an art of utilising his capability, knowledge and understanding to achieve the organizational objective. Managerial economist should have an art to put in practice his theoretical knowledge regarding elements of economic environment.

## Managerial Economics for administration of organization

Managerial economics helps the management in decision making. These decisions are based on the economic rationale and are valid in the existing economic environment.

## Managerial economics is helpful in optimum resource allocation

The resources are scarce with alternative uses. Managers need to use these limited resources optimally. Each resource has several uses. It is manager who decides with his knowledge of economics that which one is the preeminent use of the resource.

## Managerial Economics has components of micro economics

Micro Economics is a broader concept as compare to Managerial Economics. Micro Economics forms the foundation of managerial economics. Almost all the concepts of Managerial Economics are the perceptions of Micro Economics concepts.

## Managerial Economics has components of macro economics

None of the organization works in isolation. They are affected by the external environment of the economy in which it operates such as government policies, general price level, income and employment levels in the economy, stage of business cycle in which economy is operating, exchange rate, balance of payment, general expenditure, saving and investment patterns of the consumers, market conditions etc. These aspects are related to macro economics.

## Managerial Economics is dynamic in nature

Managerial Economics deals with human-beings (i.e. human resource, consumers, producers etc.). The nature and attitude differs from person to person. Thus to cope up with dynamism and vitality managerial economics also changes itself over a period of time.

### 1.1.4 Principles of Managerial Economics

Principles of Managerial Economics assist in developing rational reasoning, defined thinking, logical ability and strength of a manager. Some important principles are as follows:

## 1. Marginal and Incremental Principle

This principle states that a decision is said to be rational and sound if given the firm's objective of profit maximization, it leads to increase in profit, which is in either of two scenarios-

- If total revenue increases more than total cost.
- If total revenue declines less than total cost.

Marginal analysis implies judging the impact of a unit change in one variable on the other. Marginal generally refers to small changes. Marginal revenue is change in total revenue per unit change in output sold. Marginal cost refers to change in total costs per unit change in output produced (While incremental cost refers to change in total costs due to change in total output). The decision of a firm to change the price would depend upon the resulting impact/change in marginal revenue and marginal cost. If the marginal revenue is greater than the marginal cost, then the firm should bring about the change in price.

Incremental analysis differs from marginal analysis only in that it analysis the change in the firm's performance for a given managerial decision, whereas marginal analysis often is generated by a change in outputs or inputs. Incremental analysis is generalization of marginal concept. It refers to changes in cost and revenue due to a policy change. For example - adding a new business, buying new inputs, processing products, etc. Change in output due to change in process, product or investment is considered as incremental change. Incremental principle states that a decision is profitable if revenue increases more than costs; if costs reduce more than revenues; if increase in some revenues is more than decrease in others; and if decrease in some costs is greater than increase in others.

## 2. Equi-marginal Principle

Marginal Utility is the utility derived from the additional unit of a commodity consumed. The laws of equi-marginal utility states that a consumer will reach the stage of equilibrium when the marginal utilities of various commodities he consumes are equal. According to the modern economists, this law has been formulated in form of law of proportional marginal utility. It states that the consumer will spend his money-income on different goods in such a way that the marginal utility of each good is proportional to its price, i.e.,

## MUx $/ \mathbf{P x}=\mathbf{M U y} / \mathbf{P y}=\mathbf{M U z} / \mathbf{P z}$

Where, MU represents marginal utility and P is the price of good.

Similarly, a producer who wants to maximize profit (or reach equilibrium) will use the technique of production which satisfies the following condition:

## MRP1 / MC1 = MRP2 / MC2 = MRP3 / MC3

Where, MRP is marginal revenue product of inputs and MC represents marginal cost.
Thus, a manger can make rational decision by allocating/hiring resources in a manner which equalizes the ratio of marginal returns and marginal costs of various use of resources in a specific use.

## 3. Opportunity Cost Principle

By opportunity cost of a decision is meant the sacrifice of alternatives required by that decision. If there are no sacrifices, there is no cost. According to Opportunity cost principle, a firm can hire a factor of production if and only if that factor earns a reward in that occupation/job equal or greater than it's opportunity cost. Opportunity cost is the minimum price that would be necessary to retain a factor-service in it's given use. It is also defined as the cost of sacrificed alternatives. For instance, a person chooses to forgo his present lucrative job which offers him Rs. 50000 per month, and organizes his own business. The opportunity lost (earning Rs. 50,000) will be the opportunity cost of running his own business.

## 4. Time Perspective Principle

According to this principle, a manger/decision maker should give due emphasis, both to short-term and long-term impact of his decisions, giving apt significance to the different time periods before reaching any decision. Short-run refers to a time period in which some factors are fixed while others are variable. The production can be increased by increasing the quantity of variable factors. While long-run is a time period in which all factors of production can become variable. Entry and exit of seller firms can take place easily. From consumers point of view, short-run refers to a period in which they respond to the changes in price, given the taste and preferences of the consumers, while long-run is a time period in which the consumers have enough time to respond to price changes by varying their tastes and preferences.

## 5. Discounting Principle

According to this principle, if a decision affects costs and revenues in long-run, all those costs and revenues must be discounted to present values before valid comparison of alternatives is possible. This is essential because a rupee worth of money at a future date is not worth a rupee today. Money actually has time value. Discounting can be defined as a process used to transform future dollars into an equivalent number of present dollars. For instance, $\$ 1$ invested today at $10 \%$ interest is equivalent to $\$ 1.10$ next year.
$\mathbf{F V}=\mathbf{P V}^{*}(\mathbf{1}+\mathbf{r})^{\mathbf{t}}$

Where, FV is the future value (time at some future time), PV is the present value (value at $\mathrm{t} 0, \mathrm{r}$ is the discount (interest) rate, and t is the time between the future value and present value.

### 1.1.5 Role of a Managerial Economist

A managerial economist helps the management by using his analytical skills and highly developed techniques in solving complex issues of successful decision-making and future advanced planning. The two most important role of a managerial economist is to process information and make decisions.

The role of managerial economist can be summarized as follows:

1. He studies the economic patterns at macro-level and analysis it's significance to the specific firm he is working in.
2. He has to consistently examine the probabilities of transforming an ever-changing economic environment into profitable business avenues.
3. He assists the business planning process of a firm.
4. He also carries cost-benefit analysis.
5. He assists the management in the decisions pertaining to internal functioning of a firm.
6. In addition, a managerial economist has to analyze changes in macro- economic indicators and their possible effect on the firm's functioning.
7. He is also involved in advicing the management on public relations, foreign exchange, and trade. He guides the firm on the likely impact of changes in monetary and fiscal policy on the firm's functioning.
8. He also makes an economic analysis of the firms in competition. He has to collect economic data and examine all crucial information about the environment in which the firm operates.
9. The most significant function of a managerial economist is to conduct a detailed research on industrial market.
10. In order to perform all these roles, a managerial economist has to conduct an elaborate statistical analysis.
11. He must be vigilant and must have ability to cope up with the pressures.
12. He also provides management with economic information such as tax rates, competitor's price and product, etc. They give their valuable advice to government authorities as well.
13. At times, a managerial economist has to prepare speeches for top management.

### 1.1.6 SIGNIFICANCE OF MANAGERIAL ECONOMICS

Management is concerned with decision-making; Managerial Economics helps the decision making process in the following ways:

1. Managerial Economics a number of tools and techniques to enable a Manager to become a more competent model builder. With the help of these models, the Manager can capture the essential relationships that represent the real situation while eliminating the relatively less important details.

I2. Managerial Economics provides most of the concepts that are needed for the analysis of business problems. Concepts like elasticity of demand, fixed and various costs, short and long-run costs, opportunity costs.net present value etc. help in understand and solving a decision problem.
3. Managerial Economics helps in making decisions such as :

- What should be the product mix?
- Which is the production technique and the input-mix that is least costly?
- What should be the level of output and price for the product?
- How to take investment decisions?
- How much should a firm advertise and how to allocate the advertisement fund between different media?


### 1.1.7 Important Economic Concepts and Terms

Macro-Economic Environment: Consists of the level and direction of aggregate economic quantities like the aggregate markets for goods and services, national income, level of employment, government policies etc.

Micro-Economic Analysis: Deals with the behaviour of individual economic units which include consumers, firms, investors etc.

Normative Approach: Is prescriptive approach in that it attempts to prescribe what ought to be done.

Aspiration Level: Demands of the different groups of the organization-coalition, competing for the given resources of the firm, take the form of aspiration levels.

Expense Preference: Certain discretionary expenditures that provide satisfaction to managers, like discretionary power of investing in projects, which may enhance his status and esteem.

Fixed Costs: The costs which is fixed irrespective of the level of production and subject to the capacity constraint.

Managerial Slack: The company fund which the manager is allowed to spend for his own ends, like entertainment expense, staff car, Luxurious office.

Non-Pecuniary Aspects: Relate to physical inputs, and other variable (i.e. non-financial variables).

Optimal Decision: Enables the decision-maker (firm) to attain its desired objective most closely.

Oligopolistic Market Structure: Market with large number of buyers but a small number of sellers; where some of the sellers dominate the market, Further, action of each firm in oligopoly affects the other sellers in the market, which invites reaction from rivals in term of price cuts, changes in quality, advertising, new product line etc.

Satisfying Behaviour: When the goal of the firm is not to maximize but only to satisfy a goal / goals.

Profits: Profits may be considered as a reward for making innovations, a reward for accepting risks and uncertainties and the result of imperfections in the market structure. HenryGrayson
Profits can be defined as 'the residual payment, what is left to the producer's income after all other payments have been met'"- Hansen

Similarly, Profits can be defined as "the surplus of current income over past cost is profit."Drucker

Dynamic State: The economic state where the future is likely to be different from the present, but this change is unpredictable.

Gross Profit: The difference between receipts and payment over a time period. Inflation Accounting: To judge the impact of changing prices on the profitability and financial health of the firm.

Innovation: All those measures taken by an entrepreneur which reduce cost or enhance demand (i.e., finding new products, sale-territories, technology, etc.).

Net Profit: Profit net of implicit cost.

Normal Profit: The minimum expected return to keep an entrepreneur in his present business.

Monopoly Profit: Profit that arises due to disequilibrium and imperfection in the market. An entrepreneur earns monopoly profits not because he performs any entrepreneurial activity, but because he has a certain degree of monopoly power in the product market. His monopoly profits are in direct proportion to the extent of his monopoly power.

Risk: Those unpredictable changes that can be insured against.

Uncertainty: Those unpredictable changes that cannot be insured against.

Windfall Profits: Profits due to changes in the general price level in the market.. If the producers and traders buy their inputs and raw material when prices are low and sell their output when, due to some unforeseen external factors, the prices have abruptly gone up, then the profits resulting there from called 'windfall profits'. These come unexpectedly and cannot therefore be treated as a reward for any specific activity of the entrepreneur.

Opportunity Cost: Represents the benefits or revenue forgone by pursuing one course of action rather than another. It is the cost of next best alternative foregone.

Marginal Productivity: Output that results from one additional unit of a factor of production (such as a labour hour or a machine hour),all other factors remaining constant. Marginal product indicates the added output accruing to an additional input. Since marginal product is measured in physical units produced, it is also called marginal physical product.

Marginal Cost: The marginal cost indicates the added cost incurred in producing an additional unit of output.

Definitions of the Market: A market is a body of persons perform commercial relations at which certain kinds of exchanges of goods or services take place. Market is any area over which buyers and sellers are in close touch with one another, either directly or through dealers, that the price obtainable in one part of the market affects the prices paid in other parts.

Equilibrium Price: The price at which the quantity demanded by consumers of a product is equal to the quantity supplied by sellers of a product.

Free Entry: The absence of barriers to entry into a market. In a market characterized by free entry, greater than normal profit serves the function of drawing new firms into the industry.

Market Structure: The number and relative sizes of buyers and sellers in a particulars market, the nature of product and the degree of ease of entry of firms into the market determine the market structure. For example, in perfect competition, large number of buyers and sellers are competing with each other for buying and selling a homogenous good, while free entry and exit is permitted.

MONOPOLY: A market structure characterized by the existence of only one firm in the industry. For a firm to retain monopoly control there must be complete barriers to entry into the industry. Monopoly is a market form, which has always attracted the attention of economists. This word has come from Greek words, monos(single), polein (selling), which mean alone to sell. Therefore, in literary terms, it implies a market structure, where there is a single seller. In economic theory, monopoly is characterized by sole producer selling a distinct product for which there are no close substitutes and there are strong barriers to entry.

This sole producer (may be known as monopolist) who controls the entire supply of the market. Thus, the supply curve of the firm and the industry will be one and the same.

Perfect Competition: A market structure in which (a) the firms take market price as given, since an individual firm produces only a small fraction of total industry output; (b) the product of all firms is homogeneous;(c) there is freedom of entry into and exit from the industry; (d) there are no interferences with the activities of buyers and seller; and (e) there is perfect knowledge and mobility. This kind of idealistic market structure provides a yardstick or a standard against which other more realistic market forms can be compared, evaluated and understood better.

Price Takers: Firms that cannot influence the market price. It refers to firms in perfect competitive markets.

Price Distribution: Charging different prices for the same product from consumers in different markets segments (based on the price elasticity of demand in each market segment).

Proft-Maximizing Rule: Produce up to the point where marginal revenue is equal to marginal cost; and at higher output levels marginal revenue is less than marginal cost.

Shutdown Point: The point at which the firm must consider stopping its production activity because the short run loss remains the same (that is, equal to total fixed cost) whether the firm produces or not. In a perfectly competitive situation this point is found at the lowest point of a firm's average variable cost curve.

Break-Even Point: The point at which total cost is equal to total revenue indicating a situation of no profit and no loss.

Cartel: A group of firms that have joined together to make arrangements on pricing and market strategy. Cartel agreement is an agreement of companies or sections of companies having common interests to form an association or a cartel. Such agreements are designed by companies to prevent extreme or unfair competition and allocate markets, and to promote the interchange of knowledge resulting from scientific and technical research, exchange of patent rights, and standardization of products. A group of companies or countries which collectively
attempt to affect market prices by controlling production and marketing.It is illegal in the United States and the European Union. Very few major cartels exist; the most prominent example is OPEC, a cartel which cannot be considered illegal.

Duopoly: A market form in which there are large number of buyers but only two sellers with mutual interdependence. Two firms in the industry • Strong control over price. Uses Non price competition to compete- Very strong Barriers to entry. A pure duopoly very rarely occurs in real life , the more common is two dominate firms who hold majority of the market share.

Kinked Demand Curve: It explains the Price Rigidity. It is a graphical representation of a situation wherein rival firms do not follow the price increase of a firm but follow its price cuts. Such a demand curve is more elastic for prices above the going market price and less elastic for prices below the going price.

Monopolistic Competition: A market structure characterized by the existence of many firms in the industry, where each seller attempts to differentiate its product from its rivals, so that he has some control over price. Monopolistic competition pertains to a market situation where there is a relatively large number of a small producer or suppliers selling similar but not identical products. Monopolistic competition is a market structure characterized by many firms selling products that are similar but not identical, so firms compete on other factors besides price. Monopolistic competition is sometimes referred to as imperfect competition, because the market structure is between pure monopoly and pure competition.

Oligopoly: A market structure characterized by the existence of a few dominant firms in an industry (each recognizing their mutual interdependence) having substantial barriers to entry. An oligopoly is a market dominated by a few large suppliers. The degree of market concentration is very high (i.e. a large $\%$ of the market is taken up by the leading firms). The term oligopoly is derived from two Greek words: 'oligi' means few and 'polein' means to sell. Oligopoly is a market structure in which there are only a few sellers (but more than two) of the homogeneous or differentiated products.

Oligopoly is, sometimes, also known as 'competition among the few' as there are few sellers in the market and every seller influences and is influenced by the behaviour of other firms. Important characteristic of an oligopoly is interdependence between firms. This means that
each firm must take into account the likely reactions of other firms in the market when making pricing and investment decisions. This creates uncertainty in such markets - which economists seek to model through the use of gametheory.

Price Leadership: It occurs when a firm in an oligopoly sets a price that subsequently determines what other firms in the industry will charge for their products (known as followers).

Product Differentiation: A wide variety of activities, such as design changes and advertising that rival firms employ to attract customers by distinguishing their product from competitors' products.

Externalities: An Externality is a cost or benefit resulting from some activity or transaction that is imposed or bestowed upon parties outside the activity or transaction. Sometimes called spillover or neighborhood effects. In other words, Externality can be defined as the Third Party Cost or Benefit not reflected in market price.

- Real Externality or Technological externality: not reflected in market price
- Pecuniary Externality: embodied in market price


## Types of Externalities

- Positive Externality: MSB > MSC. It indicates inefficiency because it reveals under production situation so market failure occurs
- Negative Externality : MSC > MSB. It indicates inefficiency because it reveals over production situation so market failure occurs


## Internalizing Externalities :

The followings are the approaches to solve the problem of externalities:

- Government - imposed taxes and subsidies
- Private bargaining and negotiation
- Legal rules and procedures
- Sale or auction of rights to impose externalities
- Direct government regulation


## MORAL HAZARD (i.e. Post-contractual Opportunism)

The term Moral Hazard originated from the insurance literature. It refers to the adverse effects, from the insurance company's point of view, that insurance can have on the insuree's behaviour. A owner of a car might purchase accident insurance for his car and then could deliberately engineer an accident to collect the insurance sum.
K.Arrow (1964),- Economic agents could maximize their own utility at the expense of others in situations in which they cannot be made fully responsible for their acts. In other Words, Moral Hazard is the post-contractual opportunism that arises because actions that have efficiency consequences are not freely observable and so the person taking them may choose to pursue his or her private interests at other's expense. Moral hazard might be a pervasive problem in team production where it is difficult to monitor the contribution of each individual agent separately.

Causes of Moral Hazard: The causes of Moral Hazard mainly attributed to Asymmetry of Information, Risk- Aversion, High Measurement and Enforcement Costs and Barriers to Contracting etc.

Solutions of Moral Hazard : some of the major solutions of Moral Hazard are Monitoring, Incentive Contracts and Bonding etc

## ADVERSE SELECTION

High measurement cost in the absence of full information might result in adverse selection. Though the insurance literature had long recognized this problem, economists began to take serious note of this problem only after the appearance of George Ackerlof's "the market for lemons" (1970). For Example: Student admission: Admission into B.A. degree -requirement- only pass marks in the +2 Exam. and no other correlate of productivity or aptitude, whereas Admission into other professional courses- requirement- performance in the +2 exam. and an entrance test where other correlates are monitored, Then the Arts Colleges will experience adverse selection because the applicants who fail to qualify in the other courses might flock to Arts courses.

### 1.1.8 Different attributes for Managerial Economic skill Development

The Development of Managerial Economic skill - attributed to the followings

1. Circular flow of Economic Activities.
2. Nature and Objective of the Firm,
3. Importance of Profit: Accounting \& Economic Profit, and
4. Principal-Agent Problems, etc.

## Circular flow of Income:

The circular flow of economic activities explains the interrelationship among consumers, firms and resource owners in a market economy. The circular flow of income, output, resources and factor payment showing their interdependency are shown in the following diagram representing two sector and four sector model respectively.


Fig. Circular flow of income, output, resources \& factor payment.


## Nature and objective of the Firm

The very nature of the firm is to organise the factors of production to produce goods and services that will meet the demands of individual consumers and other firms in such a way that profit can be earned. Thus, the concept of firm and the theory of firms plays central role in Managerial Economics.

The objective of the firm is to maximize the present value of all future profits, subject to various constraints like moral, contractual, financial and technological constraints etc..

Traditionally, economists have assumed that the objective at the firm is to maximise profit. But profit in which period? This year? The next five year? Often, managers are observed making decisions that reduce current year profits in an effort to increase profits in future years. Expenditure for R\&d, New capital equipment, and major marketing programmes are a few examples of activities that reduce profits initially but will significantly increase profits in later years. As both current and future profits are important it is assumed that the goal is to maximize the present or discounted value of all future profits.

## Major Goals of Business Firms

Broadly the followings are the 5 major goals of a business firm:

1. Profit Maximization Approach: Profit maximization behaviour of the firm is one of the most fundamental assumptions of traditional neo-classical economic theory. The attempt of the entrepreneur to maximise profit is regarded as the rational behaviour of the entrepreneur. 2. Long Term Survival: According to Rothschild, main objective of a firm is to obtain the stage of long-run survival. Such firms do not like to reap larger profits in short-run but prefer lower profits in the long-run.
2. Baumol's Sale Maximisation Objective: Prof. Baumol has put forward sales maximisation (maximisation of the money value of sales) as an alternative goal to profit maximisation. He offers several justifications of sales maximisation as a goal of the firm. The objective of a firm is one of constrained maximisation where the firm maximises total revenue subject to a minimum profit constraints. According to Prof. Baumol it is the better evaluator of performance of the firm than the traditional profit maximisation model.
3. Marris's Model of the Managerial Enterprise: In Marris' model the goal of the firm is the maximisation of the balanced rate of growth of the firm, i.e., the maximisation of the rate of growth of demand for the product of the firm and of the growth of its capital supply. In short, the rationale for this goal is that by jointly maximising the rate of growth of demand and capital, the managers maximise their own utility as well as of the utility of the owners. In pursuing this maximum balanced growth rate the firm has two limitations: (i) A constraint set by the available managerial team and its skills and (ii) financial constraint set by the desire of the managers to achieve maximum job security.
4. The Behavioural Theory of the Firm: It implies Model of Satisfying Behaviour initiated by Prof. Simon in 1955. This theory was subsequently elaborated by Cyert and March. This theory focuses on the decision making process of the large multi-product firm under uncertainty in imperfect market. The firm is not treated as a single goal, single decision unit, but as a multi- goal, multi-decision organizational coalition. The firm is regarded as a coalition of different groups which are connected with its activity in various ways. The partners of this coalition are managers, workers, shareholders, customers, suppliers, bankers etc. Each group has its own set of goals. There is a conflict of goals among the different partners of this coalition. The different groups bargain continuously to achieve their goals. According to Cyert and March, there are five main goals of the firm:
(i) The Production Goal,
(ii) The Inventory Goal,
(iii) The Level of Sales goal,
(iv) The Market-share goal, and
(v) The Profit goal.

The firm tries to satisfy and not to maximise anything under this theory. In other words, the firm wants to obtain a satisfactory overall performance as defined by the set of aspiration goals. In the behavioural theory, the firm is a satisfying organisation rather than a maximising organisation. According to Cyert and March, given the uncertainty of the real world, the lack of accurate information, the limited time and limited ability of managers to process information, firms cannot work with global rationality. Given these conditions, firms do not seek maximisation of profits, sales or anything else. Instead they exhibit a satisfying behaviour. They want satisfactory profits, satisfactory sales etc.

## The Rationale for the Firm

In a free-market economy, the organization and interaction of producers (i.e., firms) and consumers is accomplished through the price system. There is no need for any central direction by government, nor is such central control or planning thought to be desirable. Within the firm, however, transactions and the organization of productive factors are generally accomplished by the central control of one or more managers. For example, workers subject themselves almost completely to management during the work period. Thus, there is an apparent dichotomy in the organization of production in a market economy. The price system guides the decentralized interaction among consumers and firms, whereas central planning and control tend to guide the interaction within firms. This raises the question, why is the production system not completely guided by price signals? That is, why do firms exist in a market economy?

Essentially, firms exist as organizations because the total cost of producing any rate of output is lower than if the firm did not exist. There are several reasons why these costs are lower. First, there is a cost of using the price system to organize production. The cost of obtaining information on prices and the cost of negotiating and concluding separate contracts for each step of the production process would be very burdensome. Firms often hire labor for long periods of time under agreements that specify only that a wage rate per hour or day will be paid for the workers doing what they are asked. That is, one general contract covers what usually will be a large number of transactions between the owners and workers. The two
parties do not have to negotiate a new contract every time the worker is given a new assignment. The saving of the transactions costs associated with such negotiations is advantageous to both parties, and thus both labor and management voluntarily seek out such arrangements.

A secondary explanation for the existence of firms is that some government interference in the marketplace applies to transactions among firms rather than within firms. For example, sales taxes usually apply only to transactions between one firm and another. In some states, a construction company may have to pay sales tax on cabinets purchased from an independent cabinetmaker. By hiring that person, this tax is avoided and the cost of producing output is reduced. By internalizing some transactions within the firm that would otherwise be subject to those interferences, production costs are reduced because this is a secondary factor, firm would exist in the absence of such interference, but it probably contributes to the existence of more and larger firms.

Given that production costs are reduced by organizing production factors into firms, why won't this process continue until there is just one large firm, such as a giant General Motors or Exxon that produces all goods and services for the entire economy? There are at least two reasons. First, the cost of organizing transactions within the firm tends to rise as the firm gets larger. Logic dictates that the firm will internalize the lower-cost transaction first, and then the higher-cost transactions. At some point, these internal transactions costs will equal the costs equal the costs of transacting in the market. At that point, the firm will cease to grow.

For example, all automobile producers in the world buy tires from companies that specialize in the production of rubber products. Surely ford and General Motors must have considered building plants to produce their own tires. It can be inferred that the cost of developing the new management skills required for such a different type of production, and the difficulty of managing an even larger and more complicated business, must have been greater than the cost of continuing to buy tires from Goodyear, Michelin, or other producers.

Another example is legal services. Usually, attorneys are not an integral part of the production process, but are needed periodically. It would be too costly for many firms to have full-time attorneys whose services would not be needed on a continual basis. So, rather than having a full-time lawyer employed by the firm, legal services are contracted on a whenneeded basis. The cost of such an arrangement for most firms is lower. In contrast, large
firms that have a continual need for legal services generally have an in house legal staff, but even they make extensive use of outside law firms.

A second factor constraining firm size is the limitation of an entrepreneur's organizational skill. Resources within the company may not be efficiently allocated if the firm's size exceeds the manager's ability to control the operation. To overcome this problem, many large firms are organized into groups of divisions referred to as profit centers. The management of each of these seeks to maximize that division's profit. By having a number of smaller organizations, each being managed somewhat independently, the problem of limited ability to control the larger firm is at least partially overcome.

Both of these reasons for a limit on the size of the firm fall under the heading of what economists have termed diminishing returns to management. Stated another way, production costs per unit of output will tend to rise as firms grow larger, because of limited managerial ability. It should be noted that many large firms recognize the problem of excessive size and decentralize by establishing a number of separate divisions or profit centers that act as individual firms.

## Economic profit and Accounting profit.

Economic profit is the difference between total revenue and total costs, where total costs include both explicit and implicit costs. Economic profit includes the opportunity costs associated with production and is therefore lower than Accounting profit. So the magnitude of difference between the economic profit and accounting profit is the extent of opportunity costs (or implicit cost)

## Accounting Profit

Accounting profit is the difference between total monetary revenue and total monetary costs, and is computed by using generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP). Put another way, accounting profit is the same as bookkeeping costs and consists of credits and debits on a firm's balance sheet. These consist of the explicit costs a firm has to maintain production (for example, wages, rent, and material costs). The monetary revenue is what a firm receives after selling its product in the market.

Accounting profit is also limited in its time scope; generally, accounting profit only considers the costs and revenue of a single period of time, such as a fiscal quarter or year.

Accounting profit $=$ Total Revenue- Total costs, where total cost constitutes explicit cost only.

## Economic Profit

Economic profit is the difference between total monetary revenue and total costs, but total costs include both explicit and implicit costs. Economic profit includes the opportunity costs associated with production and is therefore lower than accounting profit. Economic profit also accounts for a longer span of time than accounting profit. Economists often consider long-term economic profit to decide if a firm should enter or exit a market.

Economic profit $=$ Total Revenue $-($ explicit costs + implicit costs). Where implicit cost or opportunity cost is equal to what a firm must give up in order to use factors which it neither purchases nor hires.

| Accounting Profit | Economic Profit |
| :--- | :--- |
| Determined by Generally Accepted <br> Accounting Principles (GAAP) | Determined by Economic Principles |
| Includes Explicit Cost only | Includes Explicit and Opportunity Cost |
| Single entity - accounting period view | Macro Market/ Whole of Project-timeline <br> view |
| Use for Income tax and Financial <br> Performance | Used to determine market entry, stay of <br> exit |

## Example:

A recent engineering graduate turns down a job offer at Rs. 3,00,000 per year to start his own business. He will invest Rs. 5,00,000 of his own money, which has been in a bank account earning $7 \%$ interest per year. He also plans to use a building he owns that has been rented for Rs. 15,000 per month. Revenue in the new business during the first year was Rs. 10,70,000 while other expenses were:-

Advertising
Rs. 50,000

| Rent | $1,00,000$ |
| :--- | :---: |
| Taxes | 50,000 |
| Employees' Salaries | $4,00,000$ |
| Supplies | 50,000 |

Prepare two income statements, one using the traditional accounting approach and one using the opportunity cost approach to determine profit. Whether the business to be undertaken is accepted or rejected. Give your comment.

Solution:
Revenue Rs. $10,70,000$
Less: Explicit costs

| Advertising | 50,000 |  |
| :--- | ---: | ---: |
| Rent | $1,00,000$ |  |
| Taxes | 50,000 |  |
| Employees Salaries | $4,00,000$ |  |
| Supplies | 50,000 | 65,0000 |
| Accounting Profit |  | $4,20,000$ |
| Less implicit Cost |  |  |

Return of Rs. 5,00,000 35,000
Invested Capital
Rent foregone $\quad 1,80,000$
Foregone Salary $\quad 3,00,000 \quad 5,15,000$
Economic Profit
-95,000

The business is projected to lose 95,000 in the first year

## PRINCIPAL-AGENT PROBLEM

Agent is a person employed by another, designated as Principal, to act on his behalf. If the agent has acted within the scope of his authority, actions of the agent are binding on the principal. An agency relationship is established when a principal delegates some rights to an agent, who is bound by contract to represent the interests of the principal. For Example: Principal-Agent relationship includes Landlords and Tenants, Owners and Employees, Voters and elected representatives etc.

In hierarchies, when rights are transferred down an organisational ladder, except at the top and bottom levels, each individual is simultaneously a principal and agent. But the interests (utility functions) of the principals and agents do not coincide. So the agent's actions must be effectively constrained. Otherwise agents might make sub-optimal decisions when viewed from the perspective of the principal.

In Principal-Agent relationship, the agent is likely to have more information than the principal because (i) he will have more information about his own actions, preferences and abilities, and (ii) it will cost him less to acquire information about the particulars affecting the individual tasks assigned to him by the principal. Hence information is distributed asymmetrically between the two. It is costly for the principal to measure the characteristics and performance of agents. So agents could engage in shirking and opportunistic behaviour. Agent may have informational advantages in the form of "hidden actions" and "hidden information". Hidden actions cannot be accurately observed or inferred by others, such as is the case, for example, with workers' (agent's) effort which cannot be costlessly measured by employers (principal). The problem of hidden information arises when the principal is not in a position to determine whether the agents' actions, even if these could be costlessly observed, are in his interest or not- as in the case for example, of a Scan order by a physician (agent) for a patient (principal).Adverse Selection and Moral hazard Situations could develop in Principal-Agent Problems.

### 1.1.9 Summary

The managerial economics is otherwise known as alpplied micro economics. The scope and significance of managerial economics explain the understanding of various concepts of managerial economics and applying those for effective decision making. There are various concept associated with the managerial economics which will be helpful in developing the managerial economic skill of the managers as well as entrepreneurs for decision making.

### 1.1.10. Selected Questions

1. Define Managerial Economics. Discuss its scope.
2. Discuss the Scope and Significance of Managerial Economics.
3. Discuss the important principles of managerial economics.
4. Distingish between the Accounting and Economic Profit with the help of an example.
5. Discuss the role of a managerial economist.
6. Discuss the implications of Principal-Agent Problem in decision making.

## UNIT-2

## DEMAND AND CONSUMER BEHAVIOUR

### 2.1 CHAPTER

## THE DEMAND ANALYSIS

## Objectives

## After studying this unit, you should be able to:

- understand the concepts of revenue/ demand curves under different market conditions
- define demand and its determinants
- explain the Law of Demand
- identify differences between Firm's and Market Demand Curve
- understand the concept and types of elasticity of demand
- assess the price elasticity of demand as well as the determinants
- understand the supply analysis and market equilibrium
- Understand the concept and methods of demand forecasting


## Structure

2.1.1 Concepts of Revenue: TR, AR and MR
2.1.2 Relationship between AR (Demand Curve) and MR curve under Perfect competition
2.1.3 Relationship between AR(Demand curve) and MR curve under imperfect competition
2.1.4 Significance of the Concept of Revenue
2.1.5 Demand-Concept
2.1.6 Determinants of Demand
2.1.7 Law of Demand
2.1.8 Market Demand
2.1.9 Shift in Demand
2.1.10 Elasticity of Demand - concept
2.1.11 Price Elasticity of Demand
2.1.12 Income Elasticity of Demand
2.1.13 Cross Elasticity of Demand
2.1.14 Promotional Elasticity of Demand
2.1.15 Supply Analysis and Market Equilibrium
2.1.16 Demand Forecasting
2.1.17 Summary
2.1.18 Self Assessment Questions

### 2.1.1 Concepts of revenue: Marginal and Average Revenue under conditions of Perfect and imperfect competition

## Introduction

The costs and revenues of a firm determine its nature and the levels of profit. Cost refers to the expenses incurred by a producer for the production of a commodity. Revenue denotes the amount of income, which a firm receives by the sale of its output. The revenue concepts commonly used in economic are total revenue, average revenue and marginal revenue.

## Total Revenue (TR)

Total revenue refers to the total sale proceeds of a firm by selling its total output at a given price. Mathematically $\mathrm{TR}=\mathrm{PQ}$, where $\mathrm{TR}=$ Total Revenue, $\mathrm{P}=$ Price, $\mathrm{Q}=$ Quantity sold. Suppose a firm sells 100 units of a product at the price of Rs. 5 each, the total revenue will be $100 \times$ Rs. $5=$ Rs. 500 .

## Average Revenue (AR)

Average revenue is the revenue per unit of the commodity sold. It is obtained by dividing the total revenue by the number of units sold. Mathematically $A R=T R / Q$; where $A R=$ Average revenue, $\mathrm{TR}=$ Total revenue and $\mathrm{Q}=$ Quantity sold. In our example, average revenue is $=$ $500 / 100=$ Rs. 5 . Thus, average revenue means price .

## Marginal Revenue (MR)

Marginal revenue is the addition to total revenue by selling one more unit of the commodity. Mathematically $\mathrm{MR}=\Delta \mathrm{TR} / \Delta \mathrm{Q}$; where $\mathrm{MR}=$ Marginal revenue, $\Delta \mathrm{TR}=$ Change in Total revenue and $\Delta \mathrm{Q}=$ Change in Quantity sold.

Suppose 5 units of a product are sold at a total revenue of Rs. 50 and 6 units are sold at a total revenue of Rs. 60. The marginal revenue will be (Rs. $60-$ Rs. 50 )/(6-5) = 10/1= Rs. 10 .

### 2.1.2 Relationship between AR and MR under Perfect Competition

Under perfect competition, a very large number of firms are assumed to be present selling homogeneous products. So any increase or decrease in production by any one firm exerts no perceptible influence on the total supply and on the price in the market. The collective forces
of demand and supply determine the price in the market so that only one price tends to prevail for the whole industry. Each firm has to take the market price as given and sell its quantity at the ruling market price. Thus, the firm is a 'price-taker' and hence the firm's demand curve is infinitely elastic (Horizontal in shape). As the firm sells more and more at the given price, its total revenue will increase but the rate of increase in the total revenue will be constant which implies $\mathrm{AR}=\mathrm{MR}$. The relationship between AR and MR for a firm under perfect competition has been depicted in Table-1 and Fig. 1 given below.

Table-1.1.2 Relationship between AR and MR under perfect competition

| $\mathbf{Q}$ | AR (P) | TR | MR |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | 10 | 10 | 10 |
| 2 | 10 | 20 | 10 |
| 3 | 10 | 30 | 10 |
| 4 | 10 | 40 | 10 |
| 5 | 10 | 50 | 10 |
| 6 | 10 | 60 | 10 |
| 7 | 10 | 70 | 10 |



Fig.1.1.2. The Demand curve (AR) of a Firm under Perfect Competition

In figure 1.1.2, OX - axis represents the number of units sold and OY axis represents the price per unit. The price of the unit remains constant at $\mathrm{P}_{1}$. Consequently AR and MR curves coincide with each other.

### 2.1.3 Relationship between AR and MR under Imperfect Competition

Unlike under perfect competition, a firm under imperfect competition such as under monopoly can sell more only by lowering its price. Therefore, the average revenue curve is downward sloping and its corresponding marginal revenue curve lies below it.

Table-2.1.3 Relationship between AR and MR under Monopoly

| $\mathbf{Q}$ | AR (P) | TR | MR |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | 10 | 10 | 10 |
| 2 | 9 | 20 | 10 |
| 3 | 8 | 30 | 10 |
| 4 | 7 | 40 | 10 |
| 5 | 6 | 50 | 10 |
| 6 | 5 | 60 | 10 |



Fig. 2.1.3 Average and Marginal Revenue Curves under Monopoly

In figure 2.1.3, OX - axis represents the number of units of the commodity sold. OY represents the price. The AR curve as well as the MR curve slope downwards. However, the rate of fall in marginal revenue is double that of the fall of the average revenue.

## How much is MR below AR under imperfect competition?

(i) When MR and AR are straight lines and slope downwards

When AR and MR are straight lines, sloping downwards, the marginal revenue falls twice as much as the fall in the average revenue. In other words, the marginal revenue will cut any line perpendicular to the Y-axis at halfway to the average revenue curve. This can be proved mathematically. In the following figure 2.1.3 (a), $\mathrm{AB}=\mathrm{BC}$.


Fig. 2.1.3 (a) Relationship between AR \& MR Curves under imperfect competition

Total Revenue $=$ Average Revenue $\times$ Output
$\mathrm{CM} \times \mathrm{OM}=$ Area of Rectangle ACMO
Also Total Revenue $=$ Area under the marginal revenue curve $=$ RDMO

Also $\mathrm{ACMO}=\mathrm{ABDMO}+\mathrm{BCD}$ and $\mathrm{RDMO}=\mathrm{ABDMO}+\mathrm{RAB}$

Therefore, $\mathrm{ABDMO}+\mathrm{BCD}=\mathrm{ABDMO}+\mathrm{RAB}$

Or $\mathrm{BCD}=\mathrm{RAB}$

But $\mathrm{RAB}=\mathrm{BCD}$, being right angles
And $\mathrm{RBA}=\mathrm{CBD}$, being vertically opposite angles.
Thus, the two triangles are equal in area and $\mathrm{BCD}=\mathrm{RAB}$
Therefore, $\mathrm{AB}=\mathrm{BC}$
Hence, it is proved that marginal revenue curve will cut any line perpendicular to the Y -axis at halfway to the average revenue curve.

## Price Elasticity, Average Revenue and Marginal Revenue

Mrs. Joan Robinson in her book 'The Economics of Imperfect Competition' has shown the empirical relationship between price elasticity, average revenue and marginal revenue.

The relationship is expressed in the formula.
$\mathrm{AR}=\mathrm{MR}$ or $\mathrm{AR}=\mathrm{MR}(\mathrm{e} /(\mathrm{e}-1))$ or $\mathrm{MR}=\mathrm{AR}((\mathrm{e}-1) / \mathrm{e}) ;$ where, $\mathrm{AR}=$ Average Revenue, $\mathrm{MR}=$ Marginal Revenue and 'e' = price elasticity of demand.


Fig. 2.1.3 (b) Relationship between $A R, M R \&$ Price elasicity under imperfect competition

In figure 2.1.3 (b), AR and MR are the average revenue and the marginal revenue curves. Elasticity of demand at point R on the average revenue curve $=\mathrm{RT} / \mathrm{RS}$

In triangles PSR and MRT,
$\llcorner S P R=\llcorner$ RMT (right angles)
$\llcorner\mathrm{SRP}=\llcorner\mathrm{RTM}$ (corresponding angle)
Therefore, $L$ PSR $=\llcorner$ MRT
Therefore, triangles PSR and MRT are similar.
Hence, RT/RS = RM/SP

Now in triangle PSK and KRQ,
$P K=K R$
$\llcorner\mathrm{PKS}=\llcorner\mathrm{RKQ}$ (vertically opposite angles)
$\llcorner S P K=\llcorner K R Q$ (right angles)
Therefore, triangles PSK and RQK are congruent.
Hence, $\mathrm{PS}=\mathrm{RQ}$
From (1) and (2), we get,
Elasticity at $\mathrm{R}=(\mathrm{RT} / \mathrm{RS})=(\mathrm{RM} / \mathrm{SP})=(\mathrm{RM} / \mathrm{RQ})$
But $\mathrm{RM} / \mathrm{RQ}=\mathrm{RM} /(\mathrm{RM}-\mathrm{RQ})$

But $\mathrm{RM}=$ Average revenue $=$ price
$\mathrm{QM}=$ Marginal revenue
Elasticity at $\mathrm{R}=$ Average revenue/(Average revenue - Marginal revenue)
= AR/(AR-MR)
If A stands for Average revenue, $M$ stands for Marginal revenue and ' $e$ ' stands for elasticity on the average revenue curve, then $\mathrm{e}=\mathrm{A} /(\mathrm{A}-\mathrm{M})$.

Therefore, $\mathrm{e}(\mathrm{AR})-\mathrm{e}(\mathrm{MR})=\mathrm{AR}$
$e(A R)-A R=e(M R)$
$\mathrm{AR}=\mathrm{e}(\mathrm{MR}) /(\mathrm{e}-1)$
$\mathrm{AR}=\mathrm{MR}(\mathrm{e} /(\mathrm{e}-1))$
$\mathrm{MR}=\operatorname{AR}((\mathrm{e}-1) / \mathrm{e})=A R\left(\frac{e-1}{e}\right)=A R\left(1-\frac{1}{e}\right)=P\left(1-\frac{1}{e}\right)$
A few examples:

1. Suppose the price of a product is $\$ 6$ and the elasticity of demand is 2 . Marginal revenue will be $\operatorname{MR}=\operatorname{AR}((\mathrm{e}-1) / \mathrm{e})=\$ 6 \times(2-1) / 2=\$ 6 \times(1 / 2)=\$ 3$.
2. When the price of the product is $\$ 6$ and price elasticity of demand is 1 , marginal revenue will be $\operatorname{MR}=\operatorname{AR}((\mathrm{e}-1) / \mathrm{e})=\$ 6 \times(1-1) / 1=\$ 6 \times 0=0$.

If $\mathrm{MR}=0$, it is a case in which the MR curve coincides with the X -axis.

## Some Special Cases of Revenue Curves

Mrs. Joan Robinson has also pointed out many special cases of Marginal and Average revenue curves.

Rectangular Hyperbola: If the demand for the firm's product is unitary elastic $(\mathrm{e}=1)$, then the average revenue will assume the form of a rectangular hyperbola. This limiting case is possible under pure monopoly where the monopoly product has no substitutes at all.

According to the formula $\mathrm{MR}=\mathrm{AR}((\mathrm{e}-1) / \mathrm{e})$
Putting $\mathrm{e}=1$, we have $\mathrm{MR}=\mathrm{AR}((1-1) / 1)=\mathrm{AR} \times 0=0$
Thus, when the price elasticity of demand (e or PED as shown in Figure below) is equal to one or unity, though not the average revenue curve, the marginal revenue curve will be zero. Therefore, the marginal revenue curve coincides with the X -axis. Further, when PED $>1$, MR is positive $(\mathrm{MR}>0)$ and when $\mathrm{PED}<1, \mathrm{MR}$ is negative $(\mathrm{MR}<0)$ as shown in Fig.1.1.3 (C).


Fig. 2.1.3 (C) Some Special Cases of Revenue Curves

### 2.1.3.1 Average and Marginal Revenue curves under Monopolistic Competition

The average revenue and marginal revenue curve under monopolistic competition is also down sloping. It has resemblance with that of AR \& MR under monopoly. As in imperfect competition the firms are price marker the shape of AR and MR are as follows.


Fig. 2.1.3.1 Average and Marginal Revenue curves under Monopolistic Competition

### 2.1.3.2 Revenue curves under Oligopoly

Oligopoly is a market where there are only few sellers. The demand curve of a firm under oligopoly is not supposed to be smooth. The demand curve has a kink at point K on the demand curve indicating the price policy of the firm. If the firm raises the price above this price determined at the point of kink i.e. K, his rivals will not follow the suit. Consequently, his sales and profit will suffer. On the contrary, if it lowers the price, the rival firms will retaliate by following the same action. Therefore, the firm cannot gain more by lowering the price. When there is a kink in the average revenue curve, the marginal revenue is discontinuous at the point of the kink. The gap in the marginal revenue depends upon the nature of the elasticity on the upper and lower portions of the kinked demand curve. This is shown in the following figure 2.1.3.2.


Fig. 2.1.3.2 Average and Marginal Revenue curves under Oligopoly

### 2.1.4 Significance of the Concept of Revenue

(a) In determining the nature of profit

The concepts of MR and AR both together constitute a powerful analytical tool in economic analysis. Average revenue is the price per unit of output. To find out whether the firm earns
super normal profits or only normal profits or losses the following rule is followed. At the point of equilibrium -

1. If AR is tangent to AC there will be normal profit
2. If AR is above AC there will be super normal profits
3. If AR is below AC there will be loss
4. Helpful in decision-making

The concept is also vital in determining the equilibrium of a firm. The aim of every firm is to obtain maximum profits. The rule for profit maximization is $M C=M R$.

If MR > MC expansion in output will be profitable
If MR < MC expansion incurs loss

If $\mathrm{MC}=\mathrm{MR}$ equilibrium output is attained
The intersection of $M C=M R$ determines price, output, and the profit or loss of a firm.
(b) Concept of excess capacity

This concept is helpful to indicate to the entrepreneur whether the firm possesses excess capacity or not. Under perfect competition, production will be carried on up to the minimum point of the LAC. Therefore, excess capacity is not possible.

However, under imperfect competition (monopoly or monopolistic competition) the firm can earn more by reducing its output. So, production will not be carried on up to the minimum point of the long-run average cost curve. Thus, imperfect competition leads to idle capacity. It is a wastage from the society's point of view.
(c) Factor-Pricing

In fixing the prices of factors in the factor markets, AR and MR concepts are very useful. In factor pricing, the average revenue curve becomes the average revenue productivity curve, and marginal revenue curve becomes the marginal revenue productivity curve, ARP and MRP are inverted 'U' (bell Shaped) curves. The point of intersection of MFP and MFC (Marginal Factor Cost) determines the equilibrium level of price, output and profit for a firm under various cost conditions.

### 2.1.5 Demand - Concept

Demand for a commodity refers to the desire for the commodity backed by willingness and ability to pay for that commodity. So demand includes the desire to buy the commodity accompanied by the willingness to buy it and sufficient purchasing power to purchase it. For instance-Everyone might have willingness to buy Car but only a few have the ability to pay for it. Thus, everyone cannot be said to have a demand for the car.

Demand may arise from individuals, household and market. When goods are demanded by individuals, it is called as individual demand. Goods demanded by household constitute household demand. Demand for a commodity by all individuals/households in the market in total constitutes market demand. The Market demand is the horizontal summation of individual demand.

### 2.1.6 Demand Function (Determinants of Demand)

Demand function is showing relationship between the quantity demanded of a commodity and the factors influencing demand. $\mathbf{D x}=\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{P x}, \mathbf{P y}, \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{Y}, \mathbf{A}, \mathbf{P p}, \mathbf{E p}, \mathbf{U})$

In the above equation,
Dx = Quantity demanded of a commodity
Px = Price of the commodity
Py = Price of related goods
$\mathrm{T}=$ Tastes and preferences of consumer
$\mathrm{Y}=$ Income level
A = Advertising and promotional activities
$\mathrm{Pp}=$ Population (Size of the market)
$\mathrm{Ep}=$ Consumer's expectations about future prices
$\mathrm{U}=$ Specific factors affecting demand for a commodity such as seasonal changes, taxation policy, availability of credit facilities, etc.

### 2.1.7 Law of Demand

The law of demand states that there is an inverse relationship between quantity demanded of a commodity and its price, other factors being constant. In other words, higher the price, lower the demand and vice versa, other things remaining constant.

## Demand Schedule

Demand schedule is a tabular representation of the quantity demanded of a commodity at various prices. For instance, there are four buyers of apples in the market, namely A, B, C and D.

## Demand schedule for apples

| PRICE (Rs. <br> per dozen) | Buyer A <br> (demand in <br> dozen) | Buyer B <br> (demand in <br> dozen) | Buyer C <br> (demand in <br> dozen) | Buyer D <br> (demand in <br> dozen) | Market <br> Demand <br> (dozens) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 10 | 1 | 0 | 3 | 0 | 4 |
| 9 | 3 | 1 | 6 | 4 | 14 |
| 8 | 7 | 2 | 9 | 7 | 25 |
| 7 | 11 | 4 | 12 | 10 | 37 |
| 6 | 13 | 6 | 14 | 12 | 45 |

The demand by Buyers A, B, C and D are individual demands. Total demand by the four buyers is market demand. Therefore, the total market demand is derived by summing up the quantity demanded of a commodity by all buyers at each price.

## Demand Curve

Demand curve is a diagrammatic representation of demand schedule. It is a graphical representation of price- quantity relationship.


Fig. 2.1.7 Demand Curve

Demand curve has a negative slope, i.e, it slopes downwards from left to right depicting that with increase in price, quantity demanded falls and vice versa. The reasons for a downward sloping demand curve can be explained as follows-

1. Income effect- With the fall in price of a commodity, the purchasing power of consumer increases. Thus, he can buy same quantity of commodity with less money or he can purchase greater quantities of same commodity with same money. Similarly, if the price of a commodity rises, it is equivalent to decrease in income of the consumer as now he has to spend more for buying the same quantity as before. This change in purchasing power (real income) due to price change is known as income effect.
2. Substitution effect- When price of a commodity falls, it becomes relatively cheaper compared to other commodities whose price have not changed. Thus, the consumer tend to consume more of the commodity whose price has fallen, i.e, they tend to substitute that commodity for other commodities which have not become relatively dear.
3. Law of diminishing marginal utility- It is the basic cause of the law of demand. The law of diminishing marginal utility states that as an individual consumes more and more units of a commodity, the utility derived from it goes on decreasing. So as to get maximum satisfaction, an individual purchases in such a manner that the marginal utility of the commodity is equal to the price of the commodity. When the price of commodity falls, a rational consumer purchases more so as to equate the marginal utility and the price level. Thus, if a consumer wants to purchase larger quantities, then the price must be lowered. This is what the law of demand also states.

## Exceptions to Law of Demand

The instances where law of demand is not applicable are as follows-

1. There are certain goods which are purchased mainly for their snob appeal, such as, diamonds, air conditioners, luxury cars, antique paintings, etc. These goods are used as status symbols to display one's wealth. The more expensive these goods become, more valuable will be they as status symbols and more will be there demand. Thus,
such goods are purchased more at higher price and are purchased less at lower prices. Such goods are called as conspicuous goods.
2. The law of demand is also not applicable in case of Giffen goods. Giffen goods are those inferior goods, whose income effect is stronger than substitution effect. These are consumed by poor households as a necessity. For instance, potatoes, animal fat oil, low quality rice, etc. An increase in price of such good increases its demand and a decrease in price of such good decreases its demand.
3. The law of demand does not apply in case of expectations of change in price of the commodity, i.e, in case of speculation. Consumers tend to purchase less or tend to postpone the purchase if they expect a fall in price of commodity in future. Similarly, they tend to purchase more at high price expecting the prices to increase in future.

### 2.1.8 Market demand curve

Although the behaviour of an individual in respect of selection and purchase of goods forms the basis of demand theory, the aggregate demand or market demand for a good is most important for its producer. The aggregate quantity of a good that the buyers purchase or demand at a particular price and in a particular period is called the market demand for the good at the said price. Also, the curve that gives us the market demand for a good at any particular price is known as its market demand curve.

It is obvious from the definition of market demand that the horizontal or lateral summation of the individual demand curves for a good would give us its market demand curve. The market demand curve for a good would also slope downward towards right, since, owing to the law of demand.




Fig. 2.1.8 Market Demand Curve

The market demand curve can be obtained from the individual demand curves with the help of Figure. To make our analysis simple, suppose that the number of buyers of a good is only two and their individual demand curves are respectively $\mathrm{d}_{1}$ and $\mathrm{d}_{2}$. The market demand corresponding to price $\mathrm{p}_{1}$ and $\mathrm{p}_{2}$.has been shown in the figure given above. It is obvious from this that the market demand curve for a good is the horizontal summation of its individual demand curves.

### 2.1.9 Shift in Demand Curve

The demand curve shift to the right of left to the original demand curve parallelly when we reflex the assumption of other things reaming constant. The shift in demand curve has been shown as follows.


Fig. 2.1.9 Shift in Demand

### 2.1.10 Elasticity of Demand

Elasticity's of Demand: Price, Income and Cross-Elasticity of Demand
There are as many elasticities of demand as its determinants.

The most important of these elasticity's are:
(a) The price elasticity,
(b) The income elasticity,
(c) The cross-elasticity of demand.
(d) Promotional elasticity of demand

### 2.1.11 Price Elasticity of demand:

The price elasticity measures the degree of responsiveness of the change in quantity demanded for a commodity due to the change in its price, other things remaining constant. If the changes in price are very small the point elasticity of demand is used to measure the responsiveness of demand. If the changes in price are not small arc elasticity of demand is used as the relevant measure.

## Point elasticity of demand

The point elasticity of demand is defined as the proportionate change in the quantity demanded resulting from a very small proportionate change in price. Symbolically we may write

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{e}_{\mathrm{p}}=\left(\frac{d Q}{Q}\right) /\left(\frac{d P}{P}\right) \\
\text { or } \quad & \mathrm{e}_{\mathrm{p}}=\left(\frac{d Q}{d P}\right) /\left(\frac{P}{Q}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

If the demand curve is linear i.e. $\mathrm{Q}=\mathrm{b}_{0}-\mathrm{b}_{1} \mathrm{P}$

Its slope is $\frac{d Q}{d P}=-\mathrm{b}_{1}$. Substituting in the elasticity formula, we get

$$
\mathrm{e}_{\mathrm{p}}=-\mathrm{b}_{1} \cdot \frac{P}{Q}
$$

It implies that the elasticity changes at the various points of the linear-demand curve. Graphically the point elasticity of a linear-demand curve is shown by the ratio of the segments of the line to the right and to the left (i.e. ratio of lower segment to upper segment) of the particular point.

In figure 2.1.11.1 the elasticity of the linear-demand curve at point F is the ratio of $\frac{F D^{\prime}}{F D}$


Fig,2.1.11.1 Point elasticity of demand

## Proof

From the above figure it can be proved that point elasticity of a linear-demand curve is the ratio of lower segment to upper segment (i.e. FD '/ FD)
$\Delta \mathrm{P}=\mathrm{P}_{1} \mathrm{P}_{2}=\mathrm{EF}$
$\Delta \mathrm{Q}=\mathrm{P}_{1} \mathrm{P}_{2}=\mathrm{EF}^{\prime}$
$\mathrm{P}=\mathrm{OP}_{1}$
$\mathrm{Q}=\mathrm{OQ}_{1}$
If we consider very small changes in P and Q , then the point elasticity will be
$\mathrm{e}_{\mathrm{p}}=\frac{d Q}{d P} / \frac{P}{Q}=Q_{1} Q_{2} / P_{1} P_{2}=\frac{E F^{\prime}}{E F} \cdot \frac{O P 1}{O Q 1}$

From the figure also we can see that the triangles $\mathrm{FEF}^{\prime}$ and $\mathrm{FQ}_{1} \mathrm{D}^{\prime}$ are similar (because each corresponding angle is equal). Hence, $\frac{E F^{\prime}}{E F}=\mathrm{Q}_{1} \mathrm{D}^{\prime} / \mathrm{FQ}_{1}=\mathrm{Q}_{1} \mathrm{D}^{\prime} / \mathrm{OP}_{1}$.

Further, the triangles and $\mathrm{DP}_{1} \mathrm{~F}$ and $\mathrm{FQ}_{1} \mathrm{D}^{\prime}$ are similar and hence,
$\mathrm{Q}_{1} \mathrm{D}^{\prime} / \mathrm{FD}^{\prime}=\mathrm{P}_{1} \mathrm{~F} / \mathrm{FD}=\mathrm{OQ}_{1} / \mathrm{FD}$
Rearranging the above equation, we get the point price elasticity at point F as
$\mathrm{e}_{\mathrm{p}}=\mathrm{Q}_{1} \mathrm{D}^{\prime} / \mathrm{OQ}_{1}=\mathrm{FD}^{\prime} / \mathrm{FD}=$ Lower Segment $/$ Upper Segment

Given this graphical measurement of point elasticity it is obvious that at the mid-point of a linear-demand curve $e_{p}=1$ (point $M$ in the figure 2.1.11.2 given below). At any point to the right of M the point elasticity is less than unity $\left(\mathrm{e}_{\mathrm{p}}<1\right)$; finally at any point to the left of M ,
$e_{p}>1$. At point $D$ the $e_{p=} \infty$, while at point $D^{\prime}$ the $e_{p}=0$. The price elasticity is always negative because of the inverse relationship between Q and P implied by the 'law of demand'. However, traditionally the negative sign is omitted when writing the formula of the elasticity.


Fig. 2.1.11.2 Point elasticity of demand

## Arc elasticity of demand

The above formula for the price elasticity is applicable only for infinitesimal changes in the price. If the price changes appreciably we use the following formula, which measures the arc elasticity of demand

$$
\mathbf{e}_{\mathrm{p}}=\frac{\Delta Q}{\Delta P} \cdot\left[\frac{\frac{P_{1+} P_{2}}{2}}{\frac{Q_{1+}+Q_{2}}{2}}\right]=\frac{\Delta Q}{\Delta P} \cdot \frac{P_{1+} P_{2}}{Q_{1+} Q_{2}}
$$

They are elasticity is a measure of the average elasticity, that is, the elasticity at the midpoint of the chord that connects the two points ( A and B ) on the demand curve defined by the initial and the new price levels (figure 2.1.11.3). It should be clear that the measure of the arc elasticity is an approximation of the true elasticity of the section $A B$ of the demand curve, which is used when we know only the two points $A$ and $B$ from the demand curve, but not the intermediate ones. Clearly the more convex to the origin the demand curve is, the poorer the linear approximation attained by the arc elasticity formula.


Figure 2.1.11.3 Arc elasticity of demand

## Types of Price Elasticity of Demand

The extent of responsiveness of demand with change in the price is not always the same. The demand for a product can be elastic or inelastic, depending on the rate of change in the demand with respect to change in price of a product. Elastic demand is the one when the response of demand is greater with a small proportionate change in the price. On the other hand, inelastic demand is the one when there is relatively a less change in the demand with a greater change in the price. For better understanding the concepts of elastic and inelastic demand, the price elasticity of demand has been divided into five types, which are shown in Figures 2.1.11.4, 2.1.11.5 and 2.1.11.6.


Fig. 2.1.11.4 Elastic


Fig. 2.1.11.5 Inelasic


Fig.2.1.11.6 Perfectly elastic, inelastic and unitary elastic

## Table- 2.1.11

Types, Nature and Value of Price Elasticity of Demand ( $e_{p}$ )

| Types | Nature | Value of <br> $\mathbf{e}_{p}$ | Shape of <br> demand curve |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Perfectly Elastic <br> Demand | Given the price, any quantity can be <br> demanded. | $\mathrm{e}_{\mathrm{p}}=\infty$ | Horizontal |
| Perfectly <br> Inelastic <br> Demand | No change in quantity demanded despite <br> the changes in price. | $\mathrm{e}_{\mathrm{p}}=0$ | Vertical |
| Unitary Elastic <br> Demand | The percentage change in demand is equal <br> to the percentage change in the price | $\mathrm{e}_{\mathrm{p}}=1$ | Rectangular <br> hyperbola |
| Relatively <br> Elastic Demand | The percentage change in demand is more <br> than the percentage change in the price of a <br> product A small change in price leads to <br> relatively a larger change in quantity <br> demanded and vice-versa | $\mathrm{e}_{\mathrm{p}}>1$ | Flatter |


| Relatively | The percentage change in demand is less <br> Inelastic <br> Demand | $\mathrm{e}_{\mathrm{p}}<1$ | Steeper |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| product. It means A greater change in |  |  |  |
| price leads to relatively a larger change in |  |  |  |
| quantity demanded and vice-versa |  |  |  |$~\left(\begin{array}{ll} & \end{array}\right.$

## Relationship between Price elasticity and Revenue

The relationship between Price elasticity and Revenue such as (Marginal Revenue and Total Revenue) has been shown as follows:

Price elasticity (e) and Marginal Revenue (MR): $M R=A R\left(1-\frac{1}{e}\right)$
When, $\quad \mathrm{e}>1, \quad \mathrm{MR}>0$
$\mathrm{e}<1, \mathrm{MR}<0$
$\mathrm{e}=1, \quad \mathrm{MR}=0$

Price elasticity (e) and Total Revenue (TR):

| Price change | If,$\quad \mathrm{e}>1$ | If, $\mathrm{e}<1$ | If, $\mathrm{e}=1$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Price rises | TR decreases | TR increases | TR unchanged |
| Price falls | TR increases | TR decreases | TR unchanged |

## Determinants of Price Elasticity of Demand

(1) The availability of substitutes; the demand for a commodity is more elastic if there are close substitutes for it.
(2) The nature of the need that the commodity satisfies. In general, luxury goods are price elastic, while necessities are price inelastic.
(3) The time period. Demand is more elastic in the long run.
(4) The number of uses to which a commodity can be put. The more the possible uses of a commodity the greater its price elasticity will be.
(5) The proportion of income spent on the particular commodity.

### 2.1.12 Income Elasticity of demand:

The income elasticity is defined as the proportionate change in the quantity demanded resulting from a proportionate change in income. Symbolically we may write

$$
\mathrm{e}_{\mathrm{y}}=\frac{\frac{d Q}{Q}}{\frac{d Y}{Y}}=\frac{d Q}{d Y} \cdot \frac{Y}{Q}
$$

The income elasticity is positive for normal goods. Some experts have used income elasticity in order to classify goods into 'luxuries' and 'necessities'. A commodity is considered to be a 'luxury' if its income elasticity is greater than unity. A commodity is a 'necessity' if its income elasticity is less than unity.

## The main determinants of income elasticity are:

1. The nature of the need that the commodity covers the percentage of income spent on food declines as income increases (this is known as Engel's Law and has sometimes been used as a measure of welfare and of the development stage of an economy).
2. The initial level of income of a country. For example, a TV set is a luxury in an underdeveloped, poor country while it is a 'necessity' in a country with high per capita income.
3. The time period, because consumption patterns adjust with a time-lag to changes in income.

### 2.1.13 Cross-Elasticity of demand:

The cross-elasticity of demand helps in the classification of commodities into substitutes and complements.

The cross-elasticity of demand is defined as the proportionate change in the quantity demanded of x resulting from a proportionate change in the price of y . Symbolically,

$$
\mathbf{e}_{\mathrm{xy}}=\frac{d Q_{x}}{Q_{x}} / \frac{d P_{y}}{P_{y}}=\frac{d Q_{x}}{d P_{y}} \cdot \frac{P_{y}}{Q_{x}}
$$

The sign of the cross-elasticity is negative if x and y are complementary goods, and positive if $x$ and $y$ are substitutes. The higher the value of the cross-elasticity the stronger will be the degree of substitutability or complementarity of $x$ and $y$.

The main determinant of the cross-elasticity is the nature of the commodities relative to their uses. If two commodities can satisfy equally well the same need, the cross- elasticity is high, and vice versa. The cross-elasticity has been used for the definition of the firms which form an industry

### 2.1.14 Promotional or Advertising Elasticity of Demand

Advertising Elasticity of Demand (AED) measures degree of change in demand brought about by change in advertising expenditure. It means Proportionate change in demand brought about by a unit change in advertising expenditure.

AED can be expressed as AED $=(\Delta \mathrm{Dx}) /(\Delta \mathrm{AE}) \mathrm{x} \mathrm{AE} / \mathrm{Dx}$
Where $\mathrm{Dx}=$ Original (initial) Demand for commodity $\mathrm{x} \Delta \mathrm{Dx}=$ Change in demand for $\mathrm{x} A E$ $=$ Original Advertising Expenditure $\Delta \mathrm{AE}=$ change in Advertising Expenditure It can also be expressed as AED $=(\%$ change in Dx$) /(\%$ change in AE $)$

Numerical Values of Advertising Elasticity of Demand will vary from zero to infinity. It would mean that if AED is zero, advertising expenditure has no effect on demand at all.

## Types of AED

## Relatively Elastic Demand

If AED > 1, it is relatively elastic demand. It means that demand is more sensitive to the advertising expenditure and proportionately giving more than proportionate increase in demand.

## Relatively Inelastic Demand

If AED $<1$, it is relatively inelastic demand. It means that change in advertising expenditure brings about less than proportionate change in demand.

## Perfectly Inelastic Demand

If AED $=0$ it is Perfectly Inelastic demand. It means that increase in advertising expenditure has no effect at all on demand.

## Determinants of AED

- Type of product i.e. whether the product is already existing or new product
- Brand name
- Number of competitors and substitutes in the market
- Strategies of competitors
- Frequency of advertisements
- Mode of advertisements
- Time of advertisements
- Other factors influencing demand like tastes, professions, income etc.


## Uses of AED

- Helps in evaluating success of adverting campaign
- Helps the firms in deciding advertising expenditure or budget
- Helps in choosing more effective media for promotion
- Helps in withdrawing ineffective promotional campaigns
- Helps in strategic management to respond to competitor's promotional policies
- Helps in building brands


## Limitations of AED

- Value of AED does not help in analyzing effect of advertising a single product
- Difficult to analyze the effectiveness of promotional strategies at a particular period of time, especially when the campaigns are over a long period of time
- The Purpose of campaigns may be to create brands, rather than only influencing size of demand
- AED does not take into account effect of other factors influencing demand.


### 2.1.15 Supply Analysis and Market Equilibrium

## The Law of Supply

Like the law of demand, the law of supply demonstrates the quantities that will be sold at a certain price. But unlike the law of demand, the supply relationship shows an upward slope showing a direct relationship between the Price and quantity supplied of a commodity, other things remaining constant. This means that the higher the price, the higher the quantity supplied. Producers supply more at a higher price because selling a higher quantity at higher price increases revenue.


In the above figure, $\mathrm{A}, \mathrm{B}$ and C are points on the supply curve. Each point on the curve reflects a direct correlation between quantities supplied $(\mathrm{Q})$ and price $(\mathrm{P})$. At point B , the quantity supplied will be Q 2 and the price will be P 2 , and so on.

## Shifts in supply

A shift in a supply curve occurs when a good's quantity $r$ supplied changes even though price remains the same. For instance, remaining the price of a commodity at Rs. 2, the quantity supplied decreased from $\mathrm{Q}_{1}$ to $\mathrm{Q}_{2}$, then there would be a shift in the supply of the commodity as shown in the figure given below. The shift in the supply curve implies that the original supply curve has changed, meaning that the quantity supplied is affected by a factor other than price.


Fig. Shift in Supply

## Price Elasticity of Supply

Just like the law of demand, the law of supply also explains the qualitative relationship between price and supply. Qualitative relationships do not reveal the complete picture. For instance, it helps only up to a certain point to know that the quantity supplied as well as price move in the same direction. However, this is incomplete information. Economists and decision makers needed to know the magnitude of this movement. It is for this reason that they created this concept of price elasticity of supply. The elasticity of supply is based on the seller's willingness to change the quantity supplied at different prices.

The definition of price elasticity of supply is as follows:

The measure of how much the quantity supplied of a commodity responds to a change in the price of that good, computed as a percentage change in quantity supplied divided by the percentage change in price. In simpler words, the idea is to look at how many percentage points does the supply change if the price changes by $1 \%$. Based on the law of supply it is assumed that the change will always be in the same direction i.e. if price moves upwards, so does the quantity supplied and vice versa.

Price Elasticity of Supply $=$ Percentage Change in Quantity Supplied / Percentage Change in Prices

$$
=(\mathrm{Q} 2-\mathrm{Q} 1) / \mathrm{Q} 1 * 100 /(\mathrm{P} 2-\mathrm{P} 1) / \mathrm{P} 1 * 100
$$

Let's consider an example for better understanding. Let's say that for a given product X , the price earlier was $\$ 2$ and the units supplied were 400 . Now, the price increased to $\$ 2.5$ and the units supplied have changed to 600. In this case, the calculation will be as follows:

$$
=(600-400) / 400 * 100 /(\$ 2.5-\$ 2) / \$ 2 * 100=50 \% / 25 \%=2
$$

In this case the interpretation is that a $1 \%$ change in price will lead to a $2 \%$ change in the quantity supplied. As we can see here, that the elasticity of supply could range anywhere between negative infinity to positive infinity. However in $95 \%$ of the cases, it will be restricted from negative 10 to positive 10 .

Only One Type: The price elasticity of supply looks at the market from the point of view of the supplier. Hence, in almost all cases it is only sensitive to prices. It is not affected by factors such as income levels of suppliers. Hence, we do not have such a concept as income elasticity of supply. Also, the supply of one product is less likely to interfere in the quantity supplied of another product. Hence, cross elasticity of supply is also not much of a consideration. Hence, unlike elasticity of demand where there are different types possible, the elasticity of supply is more or less based on a single type.

## Determinants of Price Elasticity of Supply

Like price elasticity of demand, price elasticity of supply is also dependent on many factors as follows:

Capacity Addition: The theoretical model stated in the law of supply simply assumes that supply will be able to adjust up and down as and when the price changes. In doing so, the law of supply ignores the ground realities that are related with supply.

Related Infrastructure Growth: Industry is usually an interconnected supply chain. If one part of the supply chain grows, whereas the rest of the supply chain remains stagnant, the growth will be lopsided. This affects the elasticity of supply as well.

Perishable vs. Non Perishable: Storage capacity is not the only issue. The supplier also needs to consider whether or not the goods that they hold are perishable or not. Perishable goods have a limited shelf life and the buyers know it.

Length of Production Period: The law of supply assumes that changes in price will produce an immediate effect in the quantity supplied. This may be theoretically correct. However, this is not possible in reality for many products.

Marginal Cost of Production: The law of supply also assumes that the profitability of the supplier does not change with the number of units sold. That is not the case. In reality, we
have something called the economies of scale and diseconomies of scale. This influences the marginal cost of production.

Long Run vs. Short Run: In the short run, the supply of all products is more or less inelastic. This is because there are many factors which producers cannot vary in the short run. However, in the long run, all the factors are variable and hence the supply of all products is completely elastic. Hence companies must be careful while making capital decisions.

## Market Equilibrium

When supply and demand are equal (i.e. when the supply function and demand function intersect) the economy is said to be at equilibrium. At this point, the allocation of goods is at its most efficient because the amount of goods being supplied is exactly the same as the amount of goods being demanded. Thus, everyone (individuals, firms, or countries) is satisfied with the current economic condition. At the given price, suppliers are selling all the goods that they have produced and consumers are getting all the goods that they are $\mathrm{P}^{*}$ and Q* respectively as shown in the figure.



## Disequilibrium

Disequilibrium occurs whenever the price or quantity is not equal to $\mathrm{P}^{*}$ or $\mathrm{Q}^{*}$.

## 1. Excess Supply

If the price is set too high, excess supply will be created within the economy and there will be allocative inefficiency.


At price P 1 the quantity of goods that the producers wish to supply is indicated by Q 2 . At P1, however, the quantity that the consumers want to consume is at Q1, a quantity much less than Q2. Because Q2 is greater than Q1, too much is being produced and too little is being consumed. The suppliers are trying to produce more goods, which they hope to sell to
increase profits, but those consuming the goods will find the product less attractive and purchase less because the price is too high.

## 2. Excess Demand

Excess demand is created when price is set below the equilibrium price. Because the price is so low, too many consumers want the good while producers are not making enough of it.


In this situation, at price P1, the quantity of goods demanded by consumers at this price is Q2. Conversely, the quantity of goods that producers are willing to produce at this price is Q1. Thus, there are too few goods being produced to satisfy the wants (demand) of the consumers. However, as consumers have to compete with one other to buy the good at this price, the demand will push the price up, making suppliers want to supply more and bringing the price closer to its equilibrium.

### 2.1.16 Demand Forecasting

## Demand Forecasting

## Forecasting

A forecast is a prediction or estimation of future situation. It is an objective assessment of future course of action. Since future is uncertain, no forecast can be percent correct. Forecasts can be both physical as well as financial in nature. The more realistic the forecasts, the more effective decisions can be taken for tomorrow

Forecast is becoming the sign of survival and the language of business. All requirements of the business sector need the technique of accurate and practical reading into the future. Forecasts are, therefore, very essential requirement for the survival of business. Management requires forecasting information when making a wide range of decisions.
"Demand forecasting is an estimate of sales during a specified future period which is tied to a proposed marketing plan and which assumes a particular set of uncontrollable and competitive forces". Therefore, demand forecasting is a projection of firm's expected level of sales based on a chosen marketing plan and environment.

## Types of Forecasting:

Forecasting can be broadly classified into:

## (i) Passive Forecast and (ii) Active Forecast.

Under passive forecast prediction about future is based on the assumption that the firm does not change the course of its action. Under active forecast, prediction is done under the condition of likely future changes in the actions by the firms.
(i) Short term demand forecasting and (ii) long term demand forecasting.

In a short run forecast, seasonal patterns are of much importance. It may cover a period of three months, six months or one year. It is one which provides information for tactical decisions.

Which period is chosen depends upon the nature of business. Such a forecast helps in preparing suitable sales policy. Long term forecasts are helpful in suitable capital planning. It is one which provides information for major strategic decisions. It helps in saving the wastages in material, man hours, machine time and capacity. Planning of a new unit must start with an analysis of the long term demand potential of the products of the firm.
(i) External or national group of forecast, and (ii) Internal or company group forecast.

External forecast deals with trends in general business. It is usually prepared by a company's research wing or by outside consultants. Internal forecast includes all those that are related to the operation of a particular enterprise such as sales group, production group, and financial group. The structure of internal forecast includes forecast of annual sales, forecast of products cost, forecast of operating profit, forecast of taxable income, forecast of cash resources, forecast of the number of employees, etc.

## At different levels forecasting may be classified into:

(i) Macro-level forecasting,
(ii) Industry- level forecasting,
(iii) Firm- level forecasting and
(iv) Product-line forecasting.

## There are different forecasts for different types of products like:

(i) Forecasting demand for nondurable consumer goods,
(ii) Forecasting demand for durable consumer goods,
(iii) Forecasting demand for capital goods, and
(iv) Forecasting demand for new-products.

## Forecasting Techniques:

Demand forecasting is a difficult exercise. Making estimates for future under the changing conditions is a Herculean task. Consumers' behaviour is the most unpredictable one because it is motivated and influenced by a multiplicity of forces. There is no easy method or a simple formula which enables the manager to predict the future.

Economists and statisticians have developed several methods of demand forecasting. Each of these methods has its relative advantages and disadvantages. Selection of the right method is essential to make demand forecasting accurate. In demand forecasting, a judicious combination of statistical skill and rational judgement is needed.

The more commonly used methods of demand forecasting are discussed below: The various methods of demand forecasting can be summarised in the form of a chart as shown in Table 1.

Table 1.


## 1. Opinion Polling Method:

In this method, the opinion of the buyers, sales force and experts could be gathered to determine the emerging trend in the market.

## The opinion polling methods of demand forecasting are of three kinds:

## (a) Consumer's Survey Method or Survey of Buyer's Intentions:

In this method, the consumers are directly approached to disclose their future purchase plans. I his is done by interviewing all consumers or a selected group of consumers out of the relevant population. This is the direct method of estimating demand in the short run. Here the burden of forecasting is shifted to the buyer. The firm may go in for complete enumeration or for sample surveys. If the commodity under consideration is an intermediate product then the industries using it as an end product are surveyed.

## (i) Complete Enumeration Survey:

Under the Complete Enumeration Survey, the firm has to go for a door to door survey for the forecast period by contacting all the households in the area. This method has an advantage of first hand, unbiased information, yet it has its share of disadvantages also. The major limitation of this method is that it requires lot of resources, manpower and time.

In this method, consumers may be reluctant to reveal their purchase plans due to personal privacy or commercial secrecy. Moreover, at times the consumers may not express their opinion properly or may deliberately misguide the investigators.

## (ii) Sample Survey and Test Marketing:

Under this method some representative households are selected on random basis as samples and their opinion is taken as the generalised opinion. This method is based on the basic assumption that the sample truly represents the population. If the sample is the true representative, there is likely to be no significant difference in the results obtained by the survey. Apart from that, this method is less tedious and less costly.

A variant of sample survey technique is test marketing. Product testing essentially involves placing the product with a number of users for a set period. Their reactions to the product are noted after a period of time and an estimate of likely demand is made from the result. These are suitable for new products or for radically modified old products for which no prior data exists. It is a more scientific method of estimating likely demand because it stimulates a national launch in a closely defined geographical area.

## (iii) End Use Method or Input-Output Method:

This method is quite useful for industries which are mainly producer's goods. In this method, the sale of the product under consideration is projected as the basis of demand survey of the industries using this product as an intermediate product, that is, the demand for the final product is the end user demand of the intermediate product used in the production of this final product.

The end user demand estimation of an intermediate product may involve many final good industries using this product at home and abroad. It helps us to understand inter-industry' relations. In input-output accounting two matrices used are the transaction matrix and the input co-efficient matrix. The major efforts required by this type are not in its operation but in the collection and presentation of data.

## (b) Sales Force Opinion Method:

This is also known as collective opinion method. In this method, instead of consumers, the opinion of the salesmen is sought. It is sometimes referred as the "grass roots approach" as it
is a bottom-up method that requires each sales person in the company to make an individual forecast for his or her particular sales territory.

These individual forecasts are discussed and agreed with the sales manager. The composite of all forecasts then constitutes the sales forecast for the organisation. The advantages of this method are that it is easy and cheap. It does not involve any elaborate statistical treatment. The main merit of this method lies in the collective wisdom of salesmen. This method is more useful in forecasting sales of new products.

## (c) Experts Opinion Method:

This method is also known as "Delphi Technique" of investigation. The Delphi method requires a panel of experts, who are interrogated through a sequence of questionnaires in which the responses to one questionnaire are used to produce the next questionnaire. Thus any information available to some experts and not to others is passed on, enabling all the experts to have access to all the information for forecasting.

The method is used for long term forecasting to estimate potential sales for new products. This method presumes two conditions: Firstly, the panellists must be rich in their expertise, possess wide range of knowledge and experience. Secondly, its conductors are objective in their job. This method has some exclusive advantages of saving time and other resources.

## 2. Statistical Method:

Statistical methods have proved to be immensely useful in demand forecasting. In order to maintain objectivity, that is, by consideration of all implications and viewing the problem from an external point of view, the statistical methods are used.

## The important statistical methods are:

(i) Trend Projection Method:

A firm existing for a long time will have its own data regarding sales for past years. Such data when arranged chronologically yield what is referred to as 'time series'. Time series shows the past sales with effective demand for a particular product under normal conditions. Such data can be given in a tabular or graphic form for further analysis. This is the most popular method among business firms, partly because it is simple and inexpensive and partly because time series data often exhibit a persistent growth trend.

Time series has got four types of components namely, Secular Trend (T), Secular Variation (S), Cyclical Element (C), and an Irregular or Random Variation (I). These elements are expressed by the equation $\mathrm{O}=\mathrm{TSCI}$. Secular trend refers to the long run changes that occur as a result of general tendency.

Seasonal variations refer to changes in the short run weather pattern or social habits. Cyclical variations refer to the changes that occur in industry during depression and boom. Random variation refers to the factors which are generally able such as wars, strikes, flood, famine and so on.

When a forecast is made the seasonal, cyclical and random variations are removed from the observed data. Thus only the secular trend is left. This trend is then projected. Trend projection fits a trend line to a mathematical equation.

The trend can be estimated by using any one of the following methods:
(a) The Graphical Method,
(b) The Least Square Method.

## a) Graphical Method:

This is the most simple technique to determine the trend. All values of output or sale for different years are plotted on a graph and a smooth free hand curve is drawn passing through as many points as possible. The direction of this free hand curve-upward or downwardshows the trend. A simple illustration of this method is given in the following Table.

## Sales of Firm

| Year | Sales (Rs. in crore) |
| :---: | :---: |
| 1995 | 40 |
| 1996 | 50 |
| 1997 | 44 |
| 1998 | 60 |
| 1999 | 54 |
| 2000 | 62 |

In the following figure, AB is the trend line which has been drawn as free hand curve passing through the various points representing actual sale values.


## (b) Least Square Method:

Under the least square method, a trend line can be fitted to the time series data with the help of statistical techniques such as least square regression. When the trend in sales over time is given by straight line, the equation of this line is of the form: $y=a+b x$. Where ' $a$ ' is the intercept and 'b' shows the impact of the independent variable. We have two variables-the independent variable $x$ and the dependent variable $y$. The line of best fit establishes a kind of mathematical relationship between the two variables .v and $y$. This is expressed by the regression y on x .

In order to solve the equation $\mathbf{y}=\mathbf{a}+\mathbf{b x}$, we have to make use of the following normal equations:
$\Sigma \mathrm{y}=\mathrm{na}+\mathrm{b} \Sigma_{\mathrm{X}}$
$\Sigma^{\mathrm{xy}}=\mathrm{a} \Sigma^{\mathrm{x}+\mathrm{b}} \Sigma^{\mathrm{x} 2}$

## (ii) Barometric Technique:

A barometer is an instrument of measuring change. This method is based on the notion that "the future can be predicted from certain happenings in the present." In other words, barometric techniques are based on the idea that certain events of the present can be used to predict the directions of change in the future. This is accomplished by the use of economic and statistical indicators which serve as barometers of economic change.

Generally forecasters correlate a firm's sales with three series: Leading Series, Coincident or Concurrent Series and Lagging Series:

## (a) The Leading Series:

The leading series comprise those factors which move up or down before the recession or recovery starts. They tend to reflect future market changes. For example, baby powder sales can be forecasted by examining the birth rate pattern five years earlier, because there is a correlation between the baby powder sales and children of five years of age and since baby powder sales today are correlated with birth rate five years earlier, it is called lagged correlation. Thus we can say that births lead to baby soaps sales.

## (b) Coincident or Concurrent Series:

The coincident or concurrent series are those which move up or down simultaneously with the level of the economy. They are used in confirming or refuting the validity of the leading indicator used a few months afterwards. Common examples of coinciding indicators are G.N.P itself, industrial production, trading and the retail sector.

## (c) The Lagging Series:

The lagging series are those which take place after some time lag with respect to the business cycle. Examples of lagging series are, labour cost per unit of the manufacturing output, loans outstanding, leading rate of short term loans, etc.

## (iii) Regression Analysis:

It aims at assessing the relationship between at least two variables (one or more independent and one dependent), the purpose being to predict the value of the dependent variable from the specific value of the independent variable. The basis of this prediction generally is historical data. This method starts from the assumption that a basic relationship exists between two variables. An interactive statistical analysis computer package is used to formulate the mathematical relationship which exists. For example, one may build up the sales model as:

Quantum of Sales $=\mathrm{a}$. price +b. advertising +c . price of the rival products +d . personal disposable income +u

Where $\mathrm{a}, \mathrm{b}, \mathrm{c}, \mathrm{d}$ are the constants which show the effect of corresponding variables as sales. The constant $u$ represents the effect of all the variables which have been left out in the equation but having effect on sales. In the above equation, quantum of sales is the dependent variable and the variables on the right hand side of the equation are independent variables. If the expected values of the independent variables are substituted in the equation, the quantum of sales will then be forecasted.

## The regression equation can also be written in a multiplicative form as given below:

Quantum of Sales $=(\text { Price })^{a}+(\text { Advertising })^{b}+(\text { Price of the rival products })^{c}+($ Personal disposable income $Y)^{d}+u$

In the above case, the exponent of each variable indicates the elasticities of the corresponding variable. Stating the independent variables in terms of notation, the equation form is $\mathrm{QS}=$ $\mathrm{P}^{\mathrm{o} 8} . \mathrm{A}^{042} \cdot \mathrm{R}^{0.83} \cdot \mathrm{Y}_{2}{ }^{0.68} \cdot 40$

Then we can say that 1 per cent increase in price leads to 0.8 per cent change in quantum of sales and so on.

## If we take logarithmic form of the multiple equation, we can write the equation in an additive form as follows:

$\log \mathrm{QS}=\mathrm{a} \log \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{b} \log \mathrm{A}+\mathrm{c} \log \mathrm{R}+\mathrm{d} \log \mathrm{Y}_{\mathrm{d}}+\log \mathrm{u}$
In the above equation, the coefficients $\mathrm{a}, \mathrm{b}, \mathrm{c}$, and d represent the elasticities of variables P , $\mathrm{A}, \mathrm{R}$ and $\mathrm{Y}_{\mathrm{d}}$ respectively.
The co-efficient in the logarithmic regression equation are very useful in policy decision making by the management.

## (iv) Econometric Models:

Econometric models are an extension of the regression technique whereby a system of independent regression equation is solved. The requirement for satisfactory use of the econometric model in forecasting is under three heads: variables, equations and data.

The appropriate procedure in forecasting by econometric methods is model building. Econometrics attempts to express economic theories in mathematical terms in such a way that they can be verified by statistical methods and to measure the impact of one economic variable upon another so as to be able to predict future events.

## Utility of Forecasting:

Forecasting reduces the risk associated with business fluctuations which generally produce harmful effects in business, create unemployment, induce speculation, discourage capital formation and reduce the profit margin. Forecasting is indispensable and it plays a very important part in the determination of various policies. In modem times forecasting has been put on scientific footing so that the risks associated with it have been considerably minimised and the chances of precision increased.

## Forecasts in India:

In most of the advanced countries there are specialised agencies. In India businessmen are not at all interested in making scientific forecasts. They depend more on chance, luck and astrology. They are highly superstitious and hence their forecasts are not correct. Sufficient data are not available to make reliable forecasts. However, statistics alone do not forecast future conditions. Judgment, experience and knowledge of the particular trade are also necessary to make proper analysis and interpretation and to arrive at sound conclusions.

## Conclusion:

Decision support systems consist of three elements: decision, prediction and control. It is, of course, with prediction that marketing forecasting is concerned. The forecasting of sales can be regarded as a system, having inputs apprises and an output.

This simplistic view serves as a useful measure for the analysis of the true worth of sales forecasting as an aid to management. In spite of all these no one can predict future economic activity with certainty. Forecasts are estimates about which no one can be sure.

## Criteria of a Good Forecasting Method:

There are certain economic criteria of broader applicability for a good forecasting method. They are: (i) Accuracy, (ii) Plausibility, (iii) Durability, (iv) Flexibility, (v) Availability, (vi) Economy, (vii) Simplicity and (viii) Consistency.
There is no unique method for forecasting the sale of any commodity. The forecaster may try one or the other method depending upon his objective, data availability, the urgency with which forecasts are needed, resources he intends to devote to this work and type of commodity whose demand he wants to forecast.

### 2.1.17 Summary

Total Revenue (TR) is equal to the total quantity sold multiplied by price per unit. Marginal Revenue (MR) is the slope of total revenue. It means MR is an addition to TR by selling an additional unit of output. Average Revenue (AR) is nothing but the price per unit of output. The relationship between revenue and price elasticity reveals that $\operatorname{MR}=\operatorname{AR}[(\mathrm{e}-1) / \mathrm{e}] . \mathrm{MR}$ is positive for $\mathrm{e}>1$, negative for $\mathrm{e}<1$, zero for $\mathrm{e}=1$.

The shape of AR (Demand curve) is horizontal for a perfectly competitive firm indicating $A R=M R$. But in case of Monopoly the AR and MR are downward sloping and MR cuts half
way the distance between origin and AR on OX axis. Similarly in Monopolistic competition also the AR and MR are downward sloping. But in case of Oligopoly the AR (Demand curve) is kinked in shape showing elastic in upper and inelastic in lower portion of the kinked demand curve and MR curve is discontinuous.

The demand is affected by many factors. Assuming other factors constant the law of demand establishes an inverse relationship between price and quantity demanded. Hence the slope of demand curve is downward sloping. The parallel shift in demand curve occurs if the assumption of other things remaining constant is relaxed. The law of demand doesnot operate in case of Giffen goods.

The elasticity of demand refers to the percentage change in quantity demanded due to the percentage change in any one of the factors affecting demand. The elasticity of demand mainly classified into Price, Income, Cross and Promotional elasticity of demand.

The Price elasticity of demand of a commodity refers to the ratio of the percentage change in quantity demanded to the percentage change in price of the commodity other things remaining constant. The price elasticity of demand can be measured by point method, Arc method and total outlay method. There are five types of price elasticity of demand such as perfectly elastic $(\mathrm{e}=\infty)$, perfectly inelastic $(\mathrm{e}=0)$, unitary elastic $(\mathrm{e}=1)$, relatively more elastic or elastic (e>1), relatively less elastic or inelastic (e<1). The TR and MR vary with the variation in the value of price elasticity of demand.

The Income elasticity of demand of a commodity refers to the ratio of the percentage change in quantity demanded to the percentage change in income things remaining constant. The income elasticity of demand is relatively more elastic or elastic (e>1) for luxurious goods whereas it is relatively less elastic or inelastic ( $\mathrm{e}<1$ ) for necessary goods.

The cross-elasticity of demand helps in the classification of commodities into substitutes and complements. The cross-elasticity of demand is defined as the proportionate change in the quantity demanded of $x$ resulting from a proportionate change in the price of $y$. The sign of the cross-elasticity is negative if x and y are complementary goods, and positive if x and y are substitutes. The higher the value of the cross-elasticity the stronger will be the degree of substitutability or complementarity of $x$ and $y$.

Promotional or Advertising Elasticity of Demand (AED) measures degree of change in demand brought about by change in advertising expenditure. It means Proportionate change in demand brought about by a unit change in advertising expenditure. Numerical Values of Advertising Elasticity of Demand will vary from zero to infinity. It would mean that if AED is zero (perfectly inelastic), advertising expenditure has no effect on demand at all. If AED > 1 (relatively elastic), demand is more sensitive to the advertising expenditure. If AED < 1(relatively inelastic), demand is less sensitive to the advertising expenditure.

The market equilibrium is achieved at the interaction point of demand curve and supply curve where the demand curve is downward sloping whereas the supply curve is upward sloping. Any deviation from the equilibrium due to excess demand or supply leads to disequilibrium.

The Demand furcating is meant for the prediction of demand and will be said to be accurate provided the magnitude of difference between the forecasted and actual figure is minimum or least. There are various theoretical and statistical methods for demand forecasting adopted by various firms depending on their need and capability. However, a judicious combination of theoretical and statistical methods is expected to give desired results.

### 2.1.18 Self Assessment Questions

1. Define TR, MR and AR. Explain the relationship between AR and MR.
2. Define Demand. State the determinants of demand. Discuss the Law of demand with assumptions and exceptions.
3. Define Price elasticity of demand. Discuss its methods of Measurement and Types.
4. What is Price elasticity of demand? Discuss its relationship with TR and MR.
5. Write short notes on
(a) Income elasticity of demand
(b) Cross elasticity of demand
(c) Promotional elasticity of demand
(d) Market Equilibrium
6. Given the Demand function for $\operatorname{good} \mathrm{x}\left(\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{x}}\right)$ and other information, find solutions for the following problems.

$$
\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{x}}=12000-5000 \mathrm{Px}+5 \mathrm{I}+500 \mathrm{Pc}
$$

Where Px is the price of good x , I is income per capita and Pc is the price of the goods from competing agencies. Using the information, answer the following
(a) Determine what effect a price increase would have on total revenue.
(b) Evaluate how sale of the good x would change during a period of rising incomes.
(c) Assess the probable impact if competing agencies raise their prices. Assume that the initial values of Px , I and Pc are Rs.5, Rs. 10000 and Rs. 6 respectively.
7. Define the Law of Supply. Discuss the Price Elasticity of Supply. What are the factors affecting the Price Elasticity of Supply?
8. Define Demand Forecasting. Discuss the various methods of demand forecasting.

### 2.2 CHAPTER

## THE INDIFFERENCE CURVE ANALYSIS

## Objectives

After studying this unit, you should be able to:

- Understand the ordinal utility approach for analyzing the consumer behavior
- Define and draw the Indifference Curve
- Analyze consumer's equilibrium under Indifference Curve (IC) Approach
- Analyze the Substitution effect, Income effect and Price effect of a price change under IC analysis
- Derive the consumer demand curve from the IC approach


## Structure

2.2.1 Consumer Behaviour- Introduction
2.2.2 Concept of Indifference Curve and Marginal Rate of Substitution
2.2.3 Properties of Indifference Curve
2.2.4 The Budget Line or Price Line
2.2.5 Consumer's Equilibrium under IC Analysis
2.2.6 Price consumption curve and Price elasticity
2.2.7 Income Consumption Curve and Engle Curve
2.2.8 Price Change and Income and Substitution Effects
2.2.9 Derivation of Individual Demand Curves from IC
2.2.10 Summary
2.2.11 Self Assessment Questions

### 2.2.1 Consumer Behaviour- Introduction

There are broadly three approaches in economics to study the consumer behaviour such as Cardinal utility approach (Marginal Utility approach), Ordinal utility approach (Indifference Curve approach) and Behavioural approach (Revealed Preference approach). Here, the indifference curve approach has been discussed in the context of analyzing consumer's equilibrium.

The indifference curve is a geometrical device developed by J.R.Hicks and R.G.D. Allen for explaining how choices between two alternatives are made based on ordinal utility approach. It may be viewed as a replacement or improvement over the neo-classical cardinal utility approach or concept. In contrast to the cardinal measurement of utility, the indifference curve
measures the utility ordinally. It means, unlike cardinal utility approach, based on preference orderings how the consumers are assumed to select commodities in such a way to be remained indifferent in deriving satisfaction from the consumption of any of the available combination of two goods on the same indifference curve is explained by the indifference curve analysis.

### 2.2.2 Indifference Curve Analysis

An indifference curve is a graph showing combination of two goods that give the consumer equal satisfaction and utility. Each point on an indifference curve indicates that a consumer is indifferent between the two and all points give him the same utility.


Fig. 2.2.2 Indifference Curve (IC)

## Marginal Rate of Substitution

The marginal rate of substitution is the amount of a good that a consumer is willing to give up for another good, as long as the new good is equally satisfying. It's used in indifference theory to analyze consumer behaviour. The slope of the indifference curve is called the MRS which is the ratio of the marginal utilities of the two commodities. This is expressed as $\mathbf{M R S}_{\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}}=-\Delta \mathbf{X} / \Delta \mathbf{Y}=\mathbf{M} \mathbf{U}_{\mathbf{x}} / \mathbf{M U}_{\mathbf{y}}$. The Law of Diminishing Marginal Rates of Substitution states that MRS decreases as one moves down the standard convex-shaped curve, which is the indifference curve.

### 2.2.3 Important Properties of Indifference Curve:

## Property I. Indifference curves slope downward to the right

The indifference curves must slope downward from left to right. As the consumer increases the consumption of X commodity, he has to give up certain units of Y commodity in order to
maintain the same level of satisfaction. In the following Figure 1.2.3.1, various combinations of commodity X and commodity Y is shown by the points $\mathrm{A}, \mathrm{B}, \mathrm{C}$ and D on the same indifference curve. Thus, the consumer is indifferent towards any of the points as they represent equal level of satisfaction.


Fig. 2.2.3.1

## Property II: Indifference curves are convex to the origin (diminishing MRS $_{\mathrm{xy}}$ )

This is an important property of indifference curves. They are convex to the origin. As the consumer substitutes commodity X for commodity Y , the marginal rate of substitution of X for Y (Slope of IC) diminishes along an indifference curve. In other words, Indifference curves are convex to the origin because the marginal utility of each product consumed decreases with subsequent consumption. The reason that marginal rate of substitution diminishes is due to the principle of diminishing marginal utility. The indifference curve could not be concave, as this would mean that the marginal rate of substitution increases (which is not possible as the consumer gives up one good for another and hence it violets the fundamental feature of consumer behaviour).

In the following Figure 2.2.3.2, as the consumer moves from A to B to C to D , the willingness to substitute good X for good Y diminishes. The slope of IC is negative. In this diagram, diminishing MRSxy is depicted as the consumer is giving up $A P>B Q>C R$ units of Y for $\mathrm{PB}=\mathrm{QC}=\mathrm{RD}$ units of X . Thus indifference curve is steeper towards the Y axis and gradual towards the X axis. It is convex to the origin.


Fig. 2.2.3.2

Property III: A higher indifference curve represents a higher level of satisfaction than a lower indifference curve

Indifference curve that lies above and to the right of another indifference curve represents a higher level of satisfaction. The combination of goods which lies on a higher indifference curve will be preferred by a consumer to the combination which lies on a lower indifference curve.

In the following Figure 22.3.3, there are three indifference curves, IC1, IC2 and IC3 which represents different levels of satisfaction. The indifference curve IC3 shows greater amount of satisfaction and it contains more of both goods than IC2 and IC1.In short it can be interpreted as IC3 > IC2> IC1.


Fig.2.2.3.3
Property IV: Indifference curves cannot intersect each other

The indifference curves cannot intersect each other. It is because at the point of tangency, the higher curve will give as much as of the two commodities as is given by the lower indifference curve. This is absurd and impossible.

In the following Figure 2.2.3.4, it is shown that two indifference curves $\left(\mathrm{IC}_{1}\right.$ and $\left.\mathrm{IC}_{2}\right)$ intersect at point C . By definition of IC, $\mathrm{C}=\mathrm{A}$ and $\mathrm{C}=\mathrm{B}$ but by property III (as above) A > B. So it is obvious that under no circumstances $\mathrm{A}=\mathrm{B}$. Thus, due to this inconsistency in consumer behavior which violets the fundamental feature of IC, two indifference curves cannot intersect to each other.


Fig. 2.2.3.4

## Property V: Indifference curves cannot be circular in shape

Indifference curve cannot e circular as because it violets the property II (i.e. Convexity condition as given above). In the circle as shown in the following figure both the convex and concave portions are present which violets the fundamental principles of IC.


Fig. 2.2.3.5

Indifference Curves of Perfect Substitutes and Perfect Complements:

The degree of convexity of an indifference curve depends upon the rate of fall in the marginal rate of substitution of X for Y . But when two goods are perfect substitutes of each other, the indifference curve is a straight line on which marginal rate of substitution remains constant. Straight-line indifference curves of perfect substitutes are shown in Fig. 2.2.3 (a) below. In case of perfect substitutes, the indifference curves are parallel straight lines because the consumer equally prefers the two goods and is willing to exchange one good for the other at a constant rate.


Fig. 2.2.3 (a) Indifference curves of Perfect Substitutes

Similarly, when two goods cannot at all be substituted for each other, that is, when the two goods are perfect complementary goods, the indifference curve will consist of two straight lines with a right angle bent which is convex to the origin as shown in the following figure 2.2.3 (b). As will be seen in Fig. the left- hand portion of an indifference curve of the perfect complementary goods is a vertical straight line which indicates that an infinite amount of Y is necessary to substitute one unit of X and the right-hand portion of the indifference curve is a horizontal straight line which means' that an infinite amount of X is necessary to substitute one unit of Y. All this means that the two perfect complements are used in a certain fixed ratio and cannot be substituted for each other. Complements are thus those goods which are used jointly in consumption so that their consumption increases or decreases simultaneously. Pen and ink, right shoe and left shoe, automobile and petrol sauce and hamburger, type writer and typists are some examples of perfect complements.


Fig. 2.2.3 (b) Indifference curves of Perfect Complements

### 2.2.4 The Budget (Price) Line:

A budget line incorporates information on both the limited income of the consumer to spend and the prices of two purchasable goods. A budget line is a locus of points showing alternative combinations of two goods that can be purchased with a fixed amount of money income given prices of the two goods.
If we know the budget (or the spending power) of the consumer and his Indifference Map we can find out what quantity of each commodity he will purchase. With the same information we can measure the effect of changes in the prices of commodities and of changes in the income of the consumer.

Suppose a consumer has a fixed income M which he spends on two goods X and Y . Suppose $\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{x}}$ is the price of X and $\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{y}}$ is the price of Y . Let OB be the amount of Y which can be purchased if the whole of the consumer's income ( M ) is spent on Y . Then $\mathrm{OB} \times \mathrm{Py}=\mathrm{M}$. Or $\mathrm{OB}=\mathrm{M} /$ Py. Similarly, let OL be the amount of X which can be purchased with M. Then OL $\mathrm{x} \mathrm{p}_{\mathrm{x}}=\mathrm{M}$. Join B and L. BL is called the Price Line or the Budget Line or the ConsumptionPossibility Line (See Fig.2.2.4). The line BL has important characteristics. Every point on it shows a possible distribution of the consumer's income (M) between X and Y . The slope of the line is: $O B / O L=M / p y / M / p x=M / p y . p y / x y=p x / p y$.

This is known as the price ratio. The equation of the budget line is $\mathrm{M}=\mathrm{Px} . \mathrm{X}+\mathrm{Py} . \mathrm{Y}$.


Fig. 2.2.4 Budget Line

## Shift in budget line due to change in Price and Income:

A budget line is derived from a given income and given prices. So any change in income or price leads to a new budget line. If the price of one of the purchasable commodities falls there is a change in the slope of the budget line. Given the income and price of good Y, when the price of good X decreases the original price line BL shifts to the right i.e. BL' and when the price of good X increases the original price line BL shifts to the left i.e. BL' as shown in figure 2.2.4.1. The similar pattern is observed for the price of good Y given the income and price of good X as shown figure 2.2.4.2. A higher income leads to parallel shifts of the budget line outward (without changing its slope) i.e. BL shifts to the right i.e. BL' and a lower income leads to parallel shifts the budget line inward (without changing its slope) i.e. BL shifts to the right i.e. BL'" as shown in Figure 2.2.4.3


Fig. 2.2.4.1 Changes in Budget Line as a Result of Changes in Price of Good X


Fig. 2.2.4.2 Changes in Budget Line as a Result of Changes in Price of Good Y


Fig. 2.2.4.3 Shifts in Budget Line as a Result of Changes in Income 1

### 2.2.5 Consumer's Equilibrium through Indifference Curve (IC) Analysis:

## Definition:

"The term consumer's equilibrium refers to the amount of goods and services which the consumer may buy in the market given his income and given prices of goods in the market". The aim of the consumer is to get maximum satisfaction from his money income. Given the price line or budget line and the indifference map, "A consumer is said to be in equilibrium at a point where the price line is touching the highest attainable indifference curve from below".

## Assumptions:

The following assumptions are made to determine the consumer's equilibrium position.
(i) Rationality: The consumer is rational. He wants to obtain maximum satisfaction given his income and prices.
(ii) Utility is ordinal: It is assumed that the consumer can rank his preference according to the satisfaction of each combination of goods.
(iii) Transitivity: The consumer is supposed to be consistent about his tastes and preference. For example if he prefers A to B and B to C then it follows that he also prefers A to C. This assumption is called Transitivity.
(iv) Diminishing Marginal Substitutability: Suppose a consumer buys orange and apple. It can be assumed that as more and more of units of apple are substituted for orange, the consumer will be willing to give up fewer and fewer units of orange for additional units of apple. This is called the Principle of Diminishing Marginal Substitutability. The Principle of Diminishing Marginal Substitutability corresponds to the older law of diminishing marginal utility.
(v) Perfect competition: There is perfect competition in the market from where the consumer is purchasing the goods.

## Conditions of consumer's equilibrium under IC analysis

Thus the consumer's equilibrium under the IC analysis must meet the following two conditions:

1. Necessary Condition or First order condition: A given price line should be tangent to an indifference curve. It means marginal rate of substitution of good X for good Y $\left(\mathrm{MRS}_{\mathrm{xy}}\right)$ must be equal to the price ratio of the two goods. i.e. $\mathbf{M R S}_{\mathrm{xy}}=\mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{x}} / \mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{y}}=$ $\mathbf{M U}_{\mathbf{x}} / \mathbf{M U}_{\mathbf{y}}$.
2. Sufficient Condition or Second order condition: The second order condition is that indifference curve must be convex to the origin (diminishing MRS $\mathbf{x y}_{\text {) }}$ ) at the point of tangency.

## Explanation:

The consumer's equilibrium position is only at a point where the price line is tangent to the highest attainable indifference curve from below. In the following figure 2.2.5, there are three indifference curves $\mathrm{IC}_{1}, \mathrm{IC}_{2}$ and $\mathrm{IC}_{3}$. The price line BA is tangent to the indifference curve $\mathrm{IC}_{2}$ at point C . The consumer gets the maximum satisfaction or is in equilibrium at point E by purchasing ON units of good Y and OM units of good X with the given money income.

The consumer cannot be in equilibrium at any other point on indifference curves. For instance, point F and G lie on lower indifference curve $\mathrm{IC}_{1}$ and hence yield less satisfaction. As regards point H on indifference curve $\mathrm{IC}_{3}$, the consumer no doubt gets higher satisfaction but that is outside the budget line and hence not achievable to the consumer. The consumer's equilibrium position is only at point E where the price line is tangent to the highest attainable indifference curve $\mathrm{IC}_{2}$ from below.

Further, At point E the two conditions of equilibrium gets satisfied viz. (1) Slope of the Price Line to be Equal to the Slope of Indifference Curve i.e. $\mathbf{M R S}_{\mathbf{x y}}=\mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{x}} / \mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{y}}$ and (2) Indifference Curve is Convex to the Origin (MRS of X for Y must be diminishing) at the point of equilibrium.


Fig. 2.2.5 Consumer's Equilibrium under IC Analysis

### 2.2.6 Price elasticity and price consumption curve

In indifference curve technique the price effect is measured along the Price Consumption Curve (PCC). The PCC is the equilibrium points corresponding to the changing slope of price line due to changes in the relative prices of the two goods, the consumer's money income and other things remaining constant. PCC can be downward or upward or horizontal sloping in case of normal goods but backward-sloping for giffen goods.

Let us observe how the price elasticity of demand can be known from different shapes or slopes Price Consumption curve (PCC). In other words, whether price elasticity of demand is more than one (elastic), less than one (inelastic) or equal to one (unitary elastic) can be judged from the slope of price consumption curve (PCC). The downward sloping price consumption curve (PCC) for a good means that demand for the good is elastic, upward-
sloping PCC means that demand for the good is inelastic and horizontal straight-line PCC means that demand for the good is unitary elastic.

## Downward Sloping PCC (Demand: Elastic)

It can be seen from the following figure 2.2.6.1 that PCC is derived by joining the points Q , R, S and T where each of the points represents equilibrium points on different slopes of budget lines due to the decrease in price of good X other things remaining unchanged. The PCC derived in this figure is downward sloping. It indicates that when price of good $\mathbf{X}$ is decreasing remaining the price of Y and money income unchanged as indicated by the shift in budget line from $\mathrm{L}_{1}$ to $\mathrm{L}_{2}$ to $\mathrm{L}_{3}$ to $\mathrm{L}_{4}$, the consumer is demanding proportionately higher quantity of good $\mathbf{X}$ and small quantity of good Y as shown in this figure. It is evident from it that the price elasticity of demand for Good $X$ is elastic and hence the PCC derived for good X in this case is downward sloping.


Fig. 2.2.6.1 Downward Sloping PCC showing Elastic Demand

## Upward Sloping PCC (Demand: Inelastic)

It can be seen from the following figure 2.2.6.2 that PCC is derived by joining the points Q , $\mathrm{R}, \mathrm{S}$ and T where each of the points represents equilibrium points on different slopes of budget lines due to the decrease in price of good X other things remaining unchanged. The PCC derived in this figure is upward sloping. It indicates that when price of good $\mathbf{X}$ is decreasing remaining the price of Y and money income unchanged as indicated by the shift in budget line from $L_{1}$ to $L_{2}$ to $L_{3}$ to $L_{4}$, the consumer is demanding more of both good X and good Y but the proportionate increase in demand for $\operatorname{good} \mathbf{X}$ is less. It is evident from
it that the price elasticity of demand for Good X is inelastic and hence the PCC derived for good X in this case is upward sloping.


Fig. 2.2.6.2 Upward Sloping PCC showing Inelastic Demand

## Horizontal PCC (Demand: Unitary elastic)

It can be seen from the following figure 2.2.6.3 that PCC is derived by joining the points Q , $R$, and $S$ where each of the points represents equilibrium points on different slopes of budget lines due to the decrease in price of good X other things remaining unchanged. The PCC derived in this figure is Horizontal. It indicates that when price of $\operatorname{good} \mathbf{X}$ is decreasing remaining the price of Y and money income unchanged as indicated by the shift in budget line from $L_{1}$ to $L_{2}$ to $L_{3}$ to $L_{4}$, the consumer is demanding more of good $X$ remaining the demand for good Y same. It is evident from it that the price elasticity of demand for Good X is unitary elastic and hence the PCC derived for good X in this case is Horizontal.


Fig. 2.2.6.3 Horizontal PCC showing unitary elastic Demand

## PCC with Varying Elasticity of Demand

In the above analysis the PCC drawn shows either only elastic demand or only inelastic or unitary elastic demand over its entire range. However, since elasticity of demand varies at different prices, an indifference map can also be drawn that yields PCC which shows different elasticities at different price levels. It is depicted in figure 2.2.6.4 where it can be seen that from $\mathrm{Q}_{1}$ to $\mathrm{Q}_{2} \mathrm{PCC}$ is downward sloping and hence the demand for the good is elastic (i.e. e > 1). From $\mathrm{Q}_{2}$ to $\mathrm{Q}_{3}$ PCC is horizontal and hence the demand for the good is unitary elastic (i.e. e $=1$ ). From $\mathrm{Q}_{3}$ to $\mathrm{Q}_{4} \mathrm{PCC}$ is upward sloping and hence the demand for the good is inelastic (i.e. e < 1).


Fig. 2.2.6.4 PCC Varying Elasticity of Demand

## Backward Sloping PCC

PCC can also be backward sloping as depicted in figure 2.2.6.5. Backward Sloping PCC for good X indicates that when price of good X falls, after a point smaller quantity of it is demanded or purchased. It happens in the case exceptional type of goods called Giffen Goods. Thus the price effect of a price change in case of Giffen goods is positive.


Fig. 2.2.6.5 Backward Sloping PCC

### 2.2.7 Income Consumption Curve (ICC)

Income effect refers to the change in consumer's purchases of the goods as a result of a change in his money income which is reflected by the Income Consumption Curve (ICC). The various points ( $E, E_{1} \& E_{2}$ ) showing consumer's equilibrium at various level of income is connected together to get the ICC as shown in figure 2.2.7. The parallel shift in budget line from original budget line MN to M1N1 and M2N2 indicates change in income and the point of tangency of IC1, IC2 and IC3 on the respective budget lines represents equilibrium point as shown in the following figure 2.2.7. The ICC derived in this figure is for Normal goods.


Fig. 2.2.7 ICC for Normal goods

## ICC for Inferior and other goods

The shapes of ICC based on the nature of the commodity such as inferior and others are depicted in figure 2.2.7 (a) as given below


Fig. 2.2.7 (a) ICC for Inferior and other goods

## Income Consumption Curve and Engel Curve

In indifference curve map income consumption curve is the locus of the equilibrium quantities consumed by an individual at different levels of his income. Thus, the income consumption curve (ICC) can be used to derive the relationship between the level of consumer's income and the quantity purchased of a commodity by him.

A nineteenth century German statistician Ernet Engel (1821-1896) made an empirical study of family budgets to draw conclusions about the pattern of consumption expenditure, that is, expenditure on different goods and services by the households at different levels of income. The conclusions he arrived at are still believed to be generally valid.

According to Engel's studies, as the income of a family increases, the proportion of its income spent on necessities such as food falls and that spent on luxuries (consisting of industrial goods and services) increases. In other words, the poor families spend relatively large proportion of their income on necessities, whereas rich families spend a relatively a large part of their income on luxuries. This change in the pattern of consumption expenditure (that is, decline in the proportion of income spent on food and other necessities and increase in the proportion of income spent on luxuries) with the rise in income of the families has been called Engel's law.

Though Engel dealt with the relationship between income and expenditure on different goods, in order to keep the analysis simple it can be explained as the relationship between income and quantities purchased of goods. Thus, the curve showing the relationship between the levels of income and quantity purchased of particular commodities can be called as Engel curve. Based on this the derivation of Engel curve from income consumption curve can be made. In other words, here Engel curve relates quantity purchased of a commodity to the level of consumer's income. Thus, Engel curve shows relationship between income and quantity demanded, other factors (such as prices of goods, consumer preferences etc.) remaining the same.

## Derivation of Engle Curve from ICC for Normal goods (in case of Necessities)

The Engel Curve (EC) from Income Consumption Curve (ICC) for necessary goods has been derived as shown in the following figure 2.2.7.1. The panel (b) of the figure depicts EC where the level of income and quantity purchased of commodity X are represented by Y -axis and X -
axis are respectively. Given the indifference map $\left(\mathrm{IC}_{1}, \mathrm{IC}_{2}\right.$ and $\left.\mathrm{IC}_{3}\right)$ and the prices of two goods X and Y , Income Consumption Curve (ICC) is showing the equilibrium quantities purchased of commodities by the consumer as his income increases (shown by the parallel shift in budget lines) from Rs. 300 ( $\mathrm{B}_{1} \mathrm{~L}_{1}$ )to Rs. $400\left(\mathrm{~B}_{2} \mathrm{~L}_{2}\right)$ and to Rs. $500\left(\mathrm{~B}_{3} \mathrm{~L}_{3}\right)$ as depicted in panel (a) of the figure. It is observed from panel (a) of the figure that R, S and T are representing the equilibrium points where IC is tangential to Budget line and hence the consumer is found buying more of commodity $\mathrm{X}\left(\mathrm{OQ}_{1}, \mathrm{OQ}_{2}\right.$ and $\left.\mathrm{OQ}_{3}\right)$ when income increases from Rs. 300 to 400 to 500, given prices of goods X and Y .


Fig. 2.2.7.1 Derivation of EC from ICC
Thus equilibrium points constituting the income consumption curve in consumer's indifference map have been transformed into Engel curve depicting quantity-income relationship. Each point of an Engel curve corresponds to a relevant point of income consumption curve. Thus R' of the Engel curve EC corresponds to point R on the ICC curve and so on. As seen from panel (b), Engel curve for normal goods is upward-sloping which shows that as income increases, consumer buys more of a commodity.

The slope of Engel curve EC drawn in panel (b) of the Figure is equal to the ratio of change in income to change in quantity demanded of good X and has a positive sign. It shows that the slope of the Engel curve is found increasing as income increases. This indicates that with every equal increase in income (i.e. 300 to 400 to 500), expansion in quantity purchased of the good successively declines (i.e. $\mathrm{OQ}_{1}>\mathrm{OQ}_{2}>\mathrm{OQ}_{3}$ ). This upward-sloping Engel curve with increasing slope as income rises depicts the case of necessities, consumption of
which increases relatively less as income rises. Thus, in Engel curve drawn in panel (b) of the Figure quantity purchased of the commodity increases with the increase in income but at a decreasing rate. This shape of the Engel curve is obtained for necessities.

## Derivation of Engle Curve for Normal goods (in case of Luxury goods)

The Engel curve drawn in the following Figure is upward-sloping but is concave. This implies that slope of the Engel curve is declining with the increase in income. In other words, in the Engel curve of a commodity, the equal increments in income result in successively larger increases in the quantity purchased of the commodity. Thus, at income of Rs. 300 the consumer purchases $\mathrm{OQ}_{1}$ quantity of a commodity. The increase in income by Rs. 100 to Rs. 400 results in increase in quantity purchased of the commodity equal to $\mathrm{Q}_{1} \mathrm{Q}_{2}$. With the further increase in income by the same amount of Rs. 100 to Rs. 500, the quantity purchased increases by $\mathrm{Q}_{2} \mathrm{Q}_{3}$ which is much larger than $\mathrm{Q}_{1} \mathrm{Q}_{2}$. This implies that as a consumer becomes richer he purchases relatively more of the commodity. Such commodities are called luxuries.


Fig. 2.2.7.1(a) Derivation of EC from ICC for Luxury goods

## Derivation of Engle Curve in case of Inferior goods

In case of inferior goods, consumption of the commodity declines as income increases. Engel curve of an inferior good as drawn in the following Figure 2.2.7.2 is backward bending indicating a fall in the quantity purchased of the good as income increases.


Fig. 2.2.7.2 Derivation of EC from ICC for Inferior goods

## Derivation of Engle Curve in case of commodity unresponsive to the increase in income

An extreme case of Engel curve is a vertical straight line as drawn in the following Figure. This represents the case of a neutral commodity which is quite unresponsive to the increase in income. The Engel curve of the shape of a vertical straight line shows that a person goes on consuming the same amount of a commodity whatever the level of his income. For example, the quantity of common salt purchased by a family remains the same, determined as it is by food habits, with the increase in their income.


Fig. 2.2.7.3 Derivation of EC from ICC for neutral goods

### 2.2.8 Price change: Income and Substitution Effects.

Economists often separate the impact of a price change into two Components such as the substitution effect and income effect. The substitution effect involves the substitution of good

X good Y or vice versa due to a change in relative prices of the two goods. The income effect results from an increase or decrease in the consumer's real income or purchasing power as a result of the price change. The sum of these two effects is called the price effect.

The consumer's reaction to a change in the price of a commodity (other things remaining constant) is called the price effect. In indifference curve technique the price effect is measured along the Price Consumption Curve (PCC). The PCC is the equilibrium points corresponding to the changing slope of price line due to changes in the relative prices of the two goods, the consumer's money income remaining constant. The Price effect of a Price change is Negative in case of Normal goods.

Income effect refers to the change in consumer's purchases of the goods as a result of a change in his money income which is reflected by the Income Consumption Curve (ICC). Thus, the income effect (money income) on the consumer's purchases of the goods is positive for normal goods. But the income effect of a price change (i.e. effect of real income) on the consumer's purchases of a good is negative for normal goods.

Substitution Effect (SE): By definition, Substitution Effect means the change in the quantity demanded of a commodity resulting from a change in its price relative to the prices of other goods, the consumer's real income or satisfaction level being constant. The Substitution Effect of a price change is always negative.

## Breaking-up of Price effect into Substitution and Income Effects:

The Price Effect (PE) or Effect of a price change is the sum of the Substitution Effect (SE) and Income Effect (IE) of a price change i.e. $\mathrm{PE}=\mathrm{SE}+\mathrm{IE}=(-)$ ve for normal goods (where SE outweigh IE of a price change in case of normal goods) can be discussed with the help of two approaches such as Hicksian Compensating Variation Method and Slutsky's Cost difference Method as shown below.

## Hicksian Compensating Variation Method (for normal goods):

The Price Effect (PE) or Effect of a price change decomposed into the Substitution Effect (SE) and Income Effect (IE) of a price change can be derived through Hicksian Compensating Variation Method as shown in Figure 2.2.8 given below.


Fig. 2.2.8 Price Effect Split up into Substitution and Income Effects through Compensating Variation Method (for Normal good)

In this method of compensating variation (J.R.Hicks), the income of the consumer is adjusted so as to offset the change in satisfaction and bring back the consumer to his original indifference curve i.e. the initial level of satisfaction which he was obtaining before the change in price occurred. This process is otherwise reflected by splitting up of price effect into substitution and income effect of a price change as shown in the figure 2.2.8.

It can be seen from the figure 2.2.8 that a fall in the price of good X resulted in an increase in quantity demanded from M to N . This is the total price effect (i.e. Price effect is negative) which can be split into two separate effects such as substitution and income effects. The substitution effect is the increase in the quantity bought as the price of a commodity falls, after adjusting income so as to keep the real purchasing power of the consumer the same as before. This adjustment in income is called Compensating Variation and is shown graphically by a parallel shift of the new budget line (i.e. compensated Budget line $A B$ as shown in figure 2.2.8) until it becomes tangent to the initial Indifference Curve (i.e. $\mathrm{IC}_{1}$ ). The budget line AB is tangential to $\mathrm{IC}_{1}$ at point S which is at the right side of the original tangential point Q as depicted in figure 2.2.8. The movement from point Q to S shows the Substitution Effect of the price change implying the fact that the consumer will buy more of good X ( X being cheaper due to fall in its price) now by substituting Y for X . However, the compensating variation is a device which enables the isolation of substitution effect, but does not show the
new equilibrium of the consumer. This is defined by point R on higher Indifference curve i.e. $\mathrm{IC}_{2}$. The consumer has in fact a higher purchasing power, and if the commodity is normal, he will spend some more of his increased real income on good X , thus moving from K to N (as shown in figure 2.2.8).The movement from K to N of point S to R is called as income effect of a price change. The income effect of a price change is negative for normal goods and it reinforces the negative substitution effect. So the total price effect is negative in the case of normal goods.

## Decomposing Price Effect: Equivalent Variation in Income (for normal goods): (An Alternative Method)

The price effect can be split up into substitution and income effects through an alternative method of equivalent variation in income. The reduction in price of a commodity increases consumer's satisfaction as it enables him to reach a higher indifference curve. Now, the same increase in satisfaction can be achieved through bringing about an increase in his income, prices remaining constant.

The increase in income of the consumer, prices of goods remaining the same, enables him to move to a higher subsequent indifference curve at which he in fact reaches with reduction in price of a good is called equivalent variation in income because it represents the variation in income that is equivalent in terms of gain in satisfaction to a reduction in price of the good.

Thus, in this equivalent income-variation method substitution effect is shown along the subsequent indifference curve rather than the original one.

How this price effect is decomposed into income and substitution effects through equivalent variation in income is shown in Fig. 2.2.8 (a).

When price of good X falls, the consumer can purchase more of both the goods, that is, the purchasing power of his given money income rises. It means that after the fall in price of X if the consumer buys the same quantities of goods as before, then some amount of money will be left over. In other words, the fall in price of good X will release some amount of money. Money thus released can be spent on purchasing more of both the goods.

It therefore follows that a change in price of the good produces an income effect. When the power to purchase goods rises due to the income effect of the price change, the consumer has to decide how this increase in his purchasing power is to be spread over the two goods he is
buying. How he will spread the released purchasing power over the two goods depends upon the nature of his income consumption curve which in turn is determined by his preferences about the two goods.

From above it follows, that, as a result of the increase in his purchasing power (or real income) due to the fall in price, the consumer will move to a higher indifference curve and will become better off than before. It is as if price had remained the same but his money income was increased. In other words, a fall in price of good X does to the consumer what an equivalent rise in money income would have done to him.

As a result of fall in price of X , the consumer can therefore be imagined as moving up to a higher indifference curve along the income consumption curve as if his money income had been increased, prices of X and Y remaining unchanged. Thus, a given change in price can be thought of as an equivalent to an appropriate change in income.


Fig. 2.2.8 (a) Price effect split into Income and Substitution effects through an Equivalent Variation in Income Method

It will be seen from Fig. 8.44 that with price line $\mathrm{PL}_{1}$, the consumer is in equilibrium at Q on indifference curve $\mathrm{IC}_{1}$. Suppose price of good X falls, price of Y and his money income remaining unaltered, so that budget line is now $\mathrm{PL}_{2}$. With budget line $\mathrm{PL}_{2}$, he is in equilibrium at R on indifference curve $\mathrm{IC}_{2}$. Now, a line AB is drawn parallel to $\mathrm{PL}_{1}$ so that it touches the indifference curve $\mathrm{IC}_{2}$ at S .

It means that the increase in real income or purchasing power of the consumer as a result of the fall in price of X is equal to PA in terms of Y or $\mathrm{L}_{1} \mathrm{~B}$ in terms of X Movement of the consumer from Q on indifference curve $\mathrm{IC}_{1}$ to S on the higher indifference curve $\mathrm{IC}_{2}$ along the income consumption curve is the result of income effect of the price change. But the consumer will not be finally in equilibrium at $S$.

This is because now that X is relatively cheaper than Y , he will substitute X , which has become relatively cheaper, for good Y , which has become relatively dearer. It will be gainful for the consumer to do so. Thus the consumer will move along the indifference curve $\mathrm{IC}_{2}$ from S to R . This movement from S to R has taken place because of the change in relative prices alone and therefore represents substitution effect. Thus the price effect can be broken up into income and substitution effects, showing in this case substitution along the subsequent indifference curve. In Fig 2.2.8 (a) the magnitudes of the various effects are:
Price effect $(\mathrm{Q}$ to R$)=\mathrm{MN}$
Income effect $(\mathrm{Q}$ to S$)=\mathrm{MH}$
Substitution effect $(\mathrm{S}$ to R$)=\mathrm{HN}$
So, Price effect $=\mathrm{MH}+\mathrm{HN}=$ Income Effect + Substitution Effect

## The Slutsky's Method (Cost Difference Method) for normal goods

Slutsky's version of substitution and income effects are slightly different from that of the Hicksian one. The Slutsky's method of splitting up price effect into substitution and income effect of a price change is shown in the figure 2.2.8.1. Given the price and income initially the consumer is in equilibrium at point Q (tangential point of $\mathrm{PL}_{1}$ and $\mathrm{IC}_{1}$ ). With a fall in price of good X the price line shift to $\mathrm{PL}_{2}$ from the same origin and hence the consumer achieves the equilibrium at point R on $\mathrm{IC}_{3}$. The movement from $\mathbf{Q}$ to $\mathbf{R}$ represents Price Effect. Now, in order to find out the substitution effect the money income of the consumer be reduced by such an amount that he could buy, if so desires, the old combination Q . Thus a line AB which is parallel to line $\mathrm{PL}_{2}$ has been so drawn that it passes through point Q . Now, the consumer can have at Q if he so desires, but actually he will not buy the combination at Q because good X is now relatively cheaper than before. It will pay him to substitute X for Y and hence he will be in equilibrium at point $S$ on $\mathrm{IC}_{2}$. The movement from $\mathbf{Q}$ to $\mathbf{S}$ represents Slutsky's Substitution Effect. Now, if the money income taken away from the consumer is restored, he will move from S on $\mathrm{IC}_{2}$ to R on $\mathrm{IC}_{3}$. The movement from $\mathbf{S}$ to $\mathbf{R}$ represents Slutsky's Income Effect. Thus the movement from $\mathbf{Q}$ to $\mathbf{R}$ representing Price Effect can be
broken up into $\mathbf{Q}$ to $\mathbf{S}$ representing Substitution Effect and $\mathbf{S}$ to $\mathbf{R}$ representing Income Effect. It may be noted here that unlike Hicksian method, Slutsky's Substitution effect causes movement from a lower indifference curve to a higher one.


Fig. 2.2.8.1 Price Effect is decomposed into Substitution and Income Effects through Slutsky's Cost Difference Method (for Normal good)

## Hicksian Compensating Variation Method (for inferior goods):

The income effect for the inferior commodity is negative. But the income effect of a price change in case of inferior goods is positive. For instance, if good X is an inferior good, the income effect of a fall in the price of good X will be positive because as the real income of the consumer increases, less quantity of X will be demanded. This is so because price and quantity demanded move in the same direction. On the other hand, the negative substitution effect will increase the quantity demanded of good X .

The negative substitution effect is stronger than the positive income effect in case of inferior goods so that the total price effect is negative. It means that when the price of inferior good falls, the consumer purchases more of it due to compensating variation in income. The case of good X as an inferior good is depicted in figure 2.2.8.2. It is observed from the figure that initially the consumer is in equilibrium at point R and with the fall in the price of good X he moves to point T . The movement from point R to T (i.e. from B to E on horizontal axis) is the Price Effect. By compensating variation in income, he is in equilibrium at point H on the new
budget line MN along the original indifference curve $\mathrm{I}_{1}$. The movement from point R to H (i.e. from $B$ to $D$ on horizontal axis) is the Substitution Effect. To isolate the income effect, return the increased real income to the consumer which was taken from him so that he is again at point T (tangency of $\mathrm{PQ}_{1}$ and $\mathrm{I}_{2}$ ). The movement from point H to T (i.e. from D to E on horizontal axis) is the Income Effect of a fall in price of good X.

The income effect is positive because the fall in the price of inferior good X leads to decrease in the quantity demanded of X by DE via compensating variation in income. However, in case of an inferior good the negative substitution effect is greater than positive income effect so that the total price effect is negative. Thus Price effect $(-) \mathrm{BE}=(-) \mathrm{BD}$ (substitution effect) +DE (income effect). Thus the slope of demand curve is doward sloping even in the case of inferior good.


Fig. 2.2.8.2 Price Effect Split up into Substitution and Income Effects through Compensating Variation Method (for Inferior good)

## Hicksian Compensating Variation Method (for Giffen goods):

The good for which law of demand does not operate is called Giffen good. It is after Robert Giffen who found that potatoes were indispensible food items for the poor peasants of Ireland. He observed during the famine of 1848 that, a rise the price of potato leads to an increase in its quantity demanded. Thereafter, a fall the price of potato leads to an decrease in its quantity demanded. This direct relationship between the price and quantity demanded for the essential food item is called Giffen Paradox.

In case of Giffen goods, the positive income effect is stronger than negative substitution effect so that the consumer buys less of it when its price falls. Thus the total price effect is positive as shown in the figure 2.2.8.3. for the Giffen good X . The movement from point R (initial equilibrium) to point T (equilibrium point when price of X falls) is known as Price effect where the consumption of good X is found reduced by BE. To isolate the substitution effect, the increased real income due to fall in the price of good X is withdrawn from the consumer by drawing the budget line MN parallel to $\mathrm{PQ}_{1}$ and tangent to the original indifference curve $\mathrm{I}_{1}$ at point H . Thus the movement from point R to H represents Substitution effect which is negative as the consumer buys BD i.e. more of X due to fall in the price of X , real income being constant. To isolate the income effect, when the income that was taken away from the consumer is returned to him, he moves from point H to T so that he reduces the consumption by a large quantity DE . This is the positive income effect because with the fall in the price of Giffen good X, its quantity demanded is reduced by DE via compensating variation in income. Thus, in the case of a Giffen good the positive income effect is stronger than that of negative substitution effect and hence the total price effect is positive. That is why, the demand curve for a Giffen good has positive slope.


Fig. 2.2.8.3 Price Effect Split up into Substitution and Income Effects through Compensating Variation Method (for Giffen good)

### 2.2.9 Indifference Curve Analysis and the Demand Curve:

Indifference curve analysis can be applied to show why the demand curve usually slopes downward. To analyse it let us take commodity X assuming the consumer's income and price of other good remains constant.

The top part of Figure 2.2.9 is a conventional indifference curve diagram. The consumer is in equilibrium at point $B_{2}$ on the original budget line $A F$ and indifference curve $I_{2}$ consuming $\mathrm{OQ}_{2}$ of good X . When the price of good X falls, the budget line will move to AF ' and the consumer's equilibrium will be able at point $\mathrm{B}_{3}$ on the higher indifference curve $\mathrm{I}_{3}$ consuming more of good X (i.e. $\mathrm{OQ}_{3}$ ) Similarly, when the price of good X increases the budget line will move to AF" and the consumer's equilibrium will be able at point $\mathrm{B}_{1}$ on the lower indifference curve $\mathrm{I}_{1}$ consuming less of good X (i.e. $\mathrm{OQ}_{1}$ ). Thus joining the Points $\mathrm{B}_{1}, \mathrm{~B}_{2}$ and $\mathrm{B}_{3}$ the price consumption curve (PCC) can be obtained which reveals the change in quantity demanded of good X due to the change in price of good X remaining other things constant. The bottom part of the Fig. 2.2.9 is derived from the top part. In both parts, the horizontal axis shows the quantity of good X which will be bought, but in the bottom part of the diagram, the vertical axis shows the price of good X ( whereas the vertical axis of top part of the diagram shows good Y). This bottom part of the diagram is showing a demand curve derived from the PCC. The point $G$ derived from the point $\mathrm{B}_{2}$ of PCC (tangential point of price line AF and $\mathrm{IC}_{1}$ i.e. $\mathrm{I}_{1}$ in the figure) reveals the quantity demanded of good X i.e. $\mathrm{OQ}_{2}$ given the price of X i.e. $\mathrm{P}_{2}$ and other things. When the price of good X falls price line AF , and equilibrium achieves at point $\mathrm{B}_{3}$ of PCC corresponding to and $\mathrm{IC}_{3}$ i.e. $\mathrm{I}_{3}$ in the figure indicating more of quantity purchased of good X when its price falls. The point H in bottom part of the figure is derived corresponding to the point $\mathrm{B}_{3}$ of PCC indicates increase in the quantity demanded of good X i.e. $\mathrm{OQ}_{3}$ when its price decreases to $\mathrm{P}_{3}$. Similarly, when the price of good X increases the price line shifts to AF ' given the other things and consumer gets equilibrium at point $\mathrm{B}_{1}$ of PCC corresponding to and $\mathrm{IC}_{1}$ i.e. $\mathrm{I}_{1}$ in the figure indicating less of quantity purchased of good $X$ when its price increases. The point $E$ in bottom part of the figure is derived corresponding to the point $\mathrm{B}_{1}$ of PCC indicates decrease in the quantity demanded of good X i.e. $\mathrm{OQ}_{1}$ when its price increases to $\mathrm{P}_{1}$. So joining together these points G, H and E the demand curve for good X , which slopes down to the right, is said to be derived from PCC. The slope of the curve will depend on the consumer's preferences as shown in the top part of the diagram.


Fig. 2.2.9 Derivation of the Demand Curve

### 2.2.10 Summary

The indifference curve approach developed by Prof. Hicks discarded the Marshallian assumptions of cardinal measurement of utility and suggested ordinal measurement. An indifference curve (IC) is the locus of various points where each point represents the combination of two goods (e.g. good X and good Y ) in such a way that whatever combination the consumer will choose that will give him the same satisfaction. In other words, the consumer is indifference towards the consumption any of the combination of two goods on the same IC. Thus, the IC is slopping downward as some unit of good Y is to be sacrificed to have an additional unit of good X. Hence the slope of IC is also known as Marginal Rate of Substitution of one good for other (e.g. MRS ${ }_{x y}$ ). Further IC is convex to the origin (i.e. diminishing MRS $_{\mathrm{xy}}$ ).Higher IC gives higher Satisfaction and vice versa. Two ICs cannot intersect to each other. IC canot take any other shape other than downward sloping with convexity.

The budget line refers to the consumption of any combination with the given budget. It is also sloping downward and its slpe is represented by the ratio of price of good $X$ to price of good Y. The budget line shift to the right and left from the same origin with the fall and rise in price of good X respectively, given the price of goody and money income. However the budget line shifts paralelly to the right or left with the increase or decrease in the level of income.

Based on the properties of IC and budget line, the consumer will be at equilibrium provided at equilibrium the two conditions (necessary and sufficient conditions) are satisfied i.e. Slope of IC (i.e. $\mathrm{MRS}_{\mathrm{xy}}$ ) = Slope of Budget line (Px/Py) and IC must be convex (i.e. diminishing $\mathrm{MRS}_{\mathrm{xy}}$ ) to the origin at equilibrium point.

The effect of a price change of a commodity on the quantity consumed of that commodity (given the price of other goods and money income) is called Price Effect. So the price effect in case of normal goods is negative and for Giffen goods it is positive. The curve which represents the price effect is called as Price Consumption curve (PCC). The shape or slope of the PCC depends on the price elasticity of demand. In other words, the downward sloping price consumption curve (PCC) for a good means that demand for the good is elastic, upward-sloping PCC means that demand for the good is inelastic and horizontal straight-line PCC means that demand for the good is unitary elastic.

Income effect refers to the change in consumer's purchases of the goods as a result of a change in his money income which is reflected by the Income Consumption Curve (ICC). The shape of ICC for normal goods is positive but it is backward bending for inferior goods.

The change in the pattern of consumption expenditure (that is, decline in the proportion of income spent on food and other necessities and increase in the proportion of income spent on luxuries) with the rise in income of the families has been called Engel's law. Thus, the curve showing the relationship between the levels of income and quantity purchased of particular commodities can be called as Engel curve which can be derived from income consumption curve (ICC). The Engel curve for necessary goods is upward-sloping but for luxury goods it is upward-sloping but concave in shape. The Engel curve for inferior goods is backward bending.

The Substitution effect can be derived from the decomposition of price effect into income and substitution effect by Compensating Variation Method (Hicksian method) or Cost Difference Method (Slutsky's mehod). The price effect of a price change is negative as income effect of
a price change is negative and substitution effect of a price change is negative in case of normal goods. In case of inferior goods the negative substitution effect outweighs the positive income effect of a price change and hence price effect is negative. But in case of Giffen goods the positive income effect of a price outweigh the negative substitution effect and hence price effect is positive.

The law of demand can be established and demand curve can be derived from the Price Consumption Curve.

### 2.2.11 Self Assessment Questions

1. Define Indifference Curve (IC). Discuss its properties.
2. What is IC? How consumer equilibrium is achieved under IC analysis?
3. Define Price Consumption Curve. Discuss its relationship with price elasticity of demand.
4. Define Income Consumption curve (ICC). Discuss how Engel Curve is derived from ICC.
5. Discuss about the Engel Curve.
6. Define substitution effect. Identify substitution effect from the decomposition Of price effect under compensating variation method.
7. Discuss the breaking up of Price effect in to income and substitution effect by cost difference method.
8. Discuss the derivation of demand curve from the price effect.

## UNIT-3

## PRODUCTION FUNCTION

### 3.1 CHAPTER

## PRODUCTION FUNCTION

## Objectives

After going through this unit, you should be able to:

- Understand the economics of production
- Discuss the production function
- Understand the set of conditions required for efficient production
- Understand the estimation of production function


## Structure

3.1.1 Production Function
3.1.2 Production Function with one Variable Input (SRPF)
3.1.3 Production Iso-quants \& Marginal Rate of Technical Substitution
3.1.4 Iso-cost Line
3.1.5 The Optimal Combination of Resources (Producers Equilibrium -LRPF)
3.1.6 The Expansion Path
3.1.7 Economic Region of Production
3.1.8 Returns to Scale-Concept
3.1.9 Returns to scale using Iso-quant
3.1.10 Summary
3.1.11 Self-Assessment Questions

### 3.1.1 Production function

In economics, a production function relates physical output of a production process to physical inputs or factors of production. Production function denotes an efficient combination of inputs and outputs. The production function is of two types such as Short-run and Long run production functions. In a production function of $\mathrm{Q}=f(\mathrm{~L}, \mathrm{~K})$, where Q is output, L is labour input and K is capital input, in short run one factor normally capital ( K ) is constant (or fixed) and the other i.e. labour is assumed as variable factor. But in long run all the factors of production are variable. The behaviour of short-run production function is explained by Law of Variable Proportion or Law of Diminishing MP ${ }_{\mathrm{L}}$ whereas the behaviour of long-run production function is explained by Law of Returns to scale.

### 3.1.2 Short-run Production function

The law of variable proportion or law of diminishing marginal product of labour studies the behaviour of short run Production function as discussed below.


Fig. 3.1.2 Law of Variable Proportion

## Stages of production

To simplify the interpretation of a production function, it is common to divide its range into 3 stages. Given the capital, in Stage 1 the variable input is being used with increasing output per unit. Total product (TP), Average Product (AP) and Marginal Product (MP) of variable input (i.e. Labour) are found increasing in this stage. The point at which TP stops to increase at an increasing rate and start to increase at a diminishing ate is called as Point of inflexion. Stage 1 ends at the point of intersection of MP at the highest point of AP. This stage indicates underutilisation of capital. In Stage 2, output increases at a decreasing rate, and the average and marginal physical product are declining but positive. The optimum input/output combination for the price-taking firm (or rational producer) will be in stage 2. In Stage 3, too much variable input is being used relative to the available fixed inputs: variable inputs are over-utilized (MP of Labour is negative) in the sense that their presence on the margin obstructs the production process rather than enhancing it. The TP and AP of variable inputs are found decreasing in this state and MP of variable input (i.e. Labour) is found negative in this stage. At the boundary between stage 2 and stage 3 , the highest possible output is being obtained from the fixed input. In other words the second stage is preferred by rational producer as optimum stage. The optimal allocation of resources takes place under short-run
production function provided the condition Marginal Revenue Product of Labour $\left(\mathrm{MRP}_{\mathrm{L}}\right)=$ Wage (W), where MRP ${ }_{L}=$ Marginal Product of Labour $\left(\mathrm{MPP}_{\mathrm{L}}\right)$ X Price per unit of output $(\mathrm{P})$ is satisfied.

Stage-1: Increasing Returns to variable proportion
Stage-2: Diminishing Returns to variable proportion
Stage-3: Negative Returns to variable proportion

### 3.1.3 Isoquant

Isoquant is a curve that shows the varying combinations of factors of production such as labour and capital that can be used to produce a given quantity of a product with a given state of technology (where factor inputs can be substituted for one another in the production process). The slope of isoquant reflects the 'substitutability' of one factor for other in the production process which is called Marginal rate of Technical Substitution (MRTS). The isoquant is sloping downward to the right (as shown in figure 3.1.3) as because the two inputs can be substituted for one another in the production process. Further isoquant is convex to the origin indicating the fact that when the quantities of one factor (such as Labour) is increased, the less of another factor is (such as Capital) will be given up, if output level is to be kept constant. Thus MRTS L-K declines as we move down any isoquant from left to right.


Fig. 3.1.3 Isoqant

## Properties of Isoquants

- Isoquants are negatively sloped : It means when the amount of one factor input is increased that of other input must be decreased in order to maintain a given level of output so that any combination two factors (lying on the same isoquant) chosen will yield the same level of output which is depicted in figure 3.1.3.1.
- Isoquants are convex to the origin (Diminishing MRTS L-k) : The convexity of isoquant indicates that MRTS is diminishing which means that as the quantities of one factor (such as Labour) is increased, the less of another factor is (such as Capital) will be given up, if output level is to be kept constant as shown in figure 3.1.3.1. The Elasticity of Factor Substitution (ES) refers to the ratio of the percentage change in the ratio of Capital (K) and labour ( L ) to the percentage change in MRTS L-K which can be shown symbolically as follows.

$$
E S=\frac{\% \Delta(\mathrm{~K} / \mathrm{L})}{\% \Delta \mathrm{MRTS}_{\mathrm{L}-\mathrm{K}}}
$$

- Higher isoquant represents a higher level of output and vice-versa : Iso-quant map represents a set of isoquants describing production function of a firm where a higher isoquant represents a larger quantity of output than the lower one as depicted in figure 3.1.3.2.
- Two isoquants cannot intersect to each other: by definition each isoquant represents a specific quantum of output. Therefore, if two isoquants intersect to each other it would involve logical contradiction as a particular isoquant at a time may be representing a small as well as a large quantity of output. Thus two isoquants cannot intersect to each other as shown in figure 3.1.3.3.
- Isoquant cannot be circular: Isoquant cannot be circular as it contradicts the convexity condition of an isoquant as shown in figure 3.1.3.4.


Fig. 3.1.3.1 Isoquant-downward sloping \& convex to the origin

Fig. 3.1.3.2 Isoquant Map


Fig. 3.1.3.3 Intersection of Two Isoquants


Fig. 3.1.3.4 Circular shape of Isoquant

### 3.1.4 Isocost line

The isocost line is an important component when analyzing producer's behavior. The isocost line illustrates all the possible combinations of two factors that can be used at given costs and for a given producer's budget. In simple words, an isocost line represents a combination of two inputs that can be purchased for the same total money outlay. Its slope reflects the relative prices of two factors of production (i.e. Ratio of Price of labour to Price of capital= $\mathrm{w} / \mathrm{r}$ ).


Fig. 3.1.4.Changes in Iso-Cost Line as a Result of Changes in the Price of Labour


Fig. 3.1.4 (a) Changes in Iso-Cost Line as a Result of Changes in the income

### 3.1.5 Producer's Equilibrium or Optimisation

Producer's equilibrium or optimisation occurs when he earns maximum profit with optimal combination of factors. A profit maximisation firm faces two choices of optimal combination of factors (inputs).

1. To minimise its cost for a given output; and
2. To maximise its output for a given cost.

Thus the least cost combination of factors refers to a firm producing the largest volume of output from a given cost and producing a given level of output with the minimum cost when the factors are combined in an optimum manner. We study these cases separately.

## Cost-Minimisation for a Given Output:

In the theory of production, the profit maximisation firm is in equilibrium when, given the cost-price function, it maximises its profits on the basis of the least cost combination of
factors. For this, it will choose that combination which minimizes its cost of production for a given output. This will be the optimal combination for it.

## Assumptions:

This analysis is based on the following assumptions:

1. There are two factors, labour and capital.
2. All units of labour and capital are homogeneous.
3. The prices of units of labour (w) and that of capital (r) are given and constant.
4. The cost outlay is given.
5. The firm produces a single product.
6. The price of the product is given and constant.
7. The firm aims at profit maximisation.
8. There is perfect competition in the factor market.

## Explanation:

Given these assumptions, the point of least-cost combination of factors for a given level of output is here the isoquant curve is tangent to an iso-cost line. In the Figure 3.1.5.1, the isocost line GH is tangent to the isoquant 200 at point M .

The firm employs the combination of OC of capital and OL of labour to produce 200 units of output at point M with the given cost-outlay GH . At this point, the firm is minimising its cost for producing 200 units.


Fig. 3.1.5 . 1 Cost-Minimisation for a Given Output

Any other combination on the isoquant 200, such as R or T , is on the higher iso-cost line KP which shows higher cost of production. The iso-cost line EF shows lower cost but output 200 cannot be attained with it. Therefore, the firm will choose the minimum cost point M which is the least-cost factor combination for producing 200 units of output.

M is thus the optimal combination for the firm. The point of tangency between the iso-cost line and the isoquant is an important first order condition but not a necessary condition for the producer's equilibrium.

## There are two essential or second order conditions for the equilibrium of the firm:

1. The first condition is that the slope of the iso-cost line must equal the slope of the isoquant curve. The slope of the iso-cost line is equal to the ratio of the price of labour (w) to the price of capital (r) i.e. w / r. The slope of the isoquant curve is equal to the marginal rate of technical substitution of labour and capital (MRTS $\mathrm{MR}_{\mathrm{L}-\mathrm{K}}$ which is, in turn, equal to the ratio of the marginal product of labour to the marginal product of capital (MP $/ \mathrm{MP}_{\mathrm{K}}$ ). Thus it can be written as: $\mathbf{W} / \mathbf{r}=\mathbf{M P}_{\mathbf{L}} / \mathbf{M P}=\mathbf{M R T S}_{\mathbf{L}-\mathrm{K}}$.
2. The second condition is that at the point of tangency, the isoquant curve must be convex to the origin. In other words, the marginal rate of technical substitution of labour for capital (MRTS ${ }_{\text {LK }}$ ) must be diminishing at the point of tangency for equilibrium to be stable.

Both the situations are impossibilities because nothing can be produced either with only labour or only capital. Therefore, the firm can produce the same level of output at point M where the isoquant curve IQ is convex to the origin and is tangent to the iso-cost line GH. The analysis assumes that both the isoquants represent equal level of output $\mathrm{IQ}=\mathrm{IQ}_{1}=200$.

## Output-Maximisation for a given Cost:

The firm also maximises its profits by maximising its output, given its cost outlay and the prices of the two factors. This analysis is based on the same assumptions and conditions for the equilibrium of the firm as given above.

The firm is in equilibrium at point P where the isoquant curve 200 is tangent to the iso-cost line CL as shown in the Figure 3.1.5.2. At this point, the firm is maximising its output level of 200 units by employing the optimal combination of OM of capital and ON of labour, given
its cost outlay CL. But it cannot be at points E or F on the iso-cost line CL, since both points give a smaller quantity of output, being on the isoquant 100 , than on the isoquant 200.


Fig. 3.1.5.2 Output-Maximisation for a given Cost

The firm can reach the optimal factor combination level of maximum output by moving along the iso-cost line CL from either point E or F to point P . This movement involves no extra cost because the firm remains on the same iso-cost line. The firm cannot attain a higher level of output such as isoquant 300 because of the cost constraint. Thus the equilibrium point has to be P with optimal factor combination OM and ON .

At point P , the slope of the isoquant curve 200 is equal to the slope of the iso-cost line CL i.e. $\mathbf{w} / \mathbf{r}=$ MRTSL-k. $=\mathbf{M P L} / \mathbf{M P}_{\text {к }}$ and the second condition is that the isoquant curve must be convex to the origin at the point of tangency with the iso-cost line.

### 3.1.6 Expansion Path:

Expansion path is the locus of various points where each point represents the producer's equilibrium. Suppose, after attaining equilibrium, if a producer is willing to increase its production, then he/she needs to determine the combination that is required to reach a new equilibrium state. Let us consider the following figure in which the producer is willing to produce $\mathrm{Q}_{1}$ units of outpu and achieves its equilibrium at point $\mathrm{R}_{1}$. Now, the producer wants to produce $\mathrm{Q}_{2}$ units of output instead of $\mathrm{Q}_{1}$ units. In such a case, the equilibrium would be achieved at the point $\mathrm{R}_{2}$, as shown in the Figure. Similarly, the equilibrium point for producing $Q_{3}$ is $R_{3}$. When the points $R_{1}, R_{2}$ and $R_{3}$ are joined, a straight line is obtained, which is called expansion path or scale line.

This line is termed as scale line because producer needs to adjust its scale of production according to this line to achieve the output he/she desires. On the other hand, this line is also termed as expansion path because the producer needs to expand his/her output by following this path when the prices of factors remain constant. Producers would prefer to move along the scale line to increase the output to get maximum output at least cost with fixed factor prices.


Fig. 3.1.6 Expansion path

### 3.1.7 Feasible Economic Region of Production

The ridge lines are the locus of points of isoquants where the marginal products (MP) of factors are zero. The upper ridge line implies zero MP of capital and the lower ridge line implies zero MP of labour. Production techniques are only efficient inside the ridge lines. Areas outside the economic region of production mean that at least one of the inputs has negative marginal productivity. This region is marked by what are called ridge lines, which are simply the boundaries beyond which one of the two factors is being overused. The feasible economic region of production is depicted in figure 3.1.7 where A and B are representing upper and lower ridge lines respectively. At each point of A (such as $\mathrm{A}_{1}---\mathrm{A}_{4}$ ) Marginal Product of Capital is zero $\left(\mathrm{MP}_{\mathrm{K}}=0\right)$ and at each point of $\mathrm{B}\left(\right.$ such as $\left.\mathrm{B}_{1}---\mathrm{B}_{4}\right)$ Marginal Product of Labour is zero $\left(\mathrm{MP}_{\mathrm{L}}=0\right)$. The Feasible Economic Region of Production lies between the points $\mathrm{A}_{1}---\mathrm{A}_{4}$ and $\mathrm{B}_{1}---\mathrm{B}_{4}$.


Fig. 3.1.7 Economic Region of Production

### 3.1.8 Returns to Scale - Concept

The term returns to scale arises in the context of a firm's production function. It explains the behaviour of the rate of increase in output (production) relative to the associated increase in the inputs (the factors of production) in the long run. In the long run all factors of production are variable and subject to change due to a given increase in size (scale).

The returns to scale are of the following three types:

- Constant Returns to Scale
- Increasing Returns to Scale, and
- Decreasing Returns to Scale

If output increases by that same proportional change as all inputs change then there are constant returns to scale (CRS). If output increases by more than that proportional change in inputs, there are increasing returns to scale (IRS). If output increases by less than that proportional change in inputs, there are decreasing returns to scale (DRS).

## Cobb-Douglas production function

The Cobb-Douglas production function reflects the relationships between its inputs namely physical capital and labor - and the amount of output produced. It's a means for calculating the impact of changes in the inputs, the relevant efficiencies, and the yields of a production activity. Here's the basic form of the Cobb-Douglas production function:

$$
Q(L, K)=A L^{\beta} K^{\alpha}
$$

- $\mathrm{Q}=$ total production (the real value of all goods produced in a year)
- $\mathrm{L}=$ labour input (the total number of person-hours worked in a year)
- $K=$ capital input (the real value of all machinery, equipment, and buildings)
- $\mathrm{A}=$ total factor productivity (i.e Constant)
- $\beta$ and $\alpha$ are the output elasticities of labour and capital respectively.

Output elasticity measures the responsiveness of output to a change in levels of either labor or capital used in production, ceteris paribus. For example, if $\alpha=0.45$, a $1 \%$ increase in capital usage would lead to approximately a $0.45 \%$ increase in output.

If, $\alpha+\beta=1$, Constant Returns to Scale
If, $\alpha+\beta>1$, Increasing Returns to Scale
If, $\alpha+\beta<1$, Decreasing Returns to Scale

### 3.1.9 Returns to scale using Isoquant approach

The return to scale may be shown diagrammatically on an expansion path by the distance between successive 'multiple-level-of -output' isoquants, that is, isoquants that show levels of output which are multiples of some base level of output e.g., 100,200,300 etc.

Constant Returns to Scale: The distance between successive multiple isoquants along the expansion path ( OR in the figure) is constant (i.e. $\mathrm{OD}=\mathrm{DE}=\mathrm{EF}$ as shown in the diagram). It means Doubling factor inputs (Labour \& Capital) achieves double the level of the initial output; trebling inputs achieves treble output and so on. In this case the Production function is homogeneous of degree one. The constant returns to scale as shown in the figure indicate the facts as follows.

100 units of output require $1(2 \mathrm{C}+2 \mathrm{~L})=2 \mathrm{C}+2 \mathrm{~L}$ where, $\mathrm{C}=$ Capital and $\mathrm{L}=$ Labour 200 units of output require $2(2 \mathrm{C}+2 \mathrm{~L})=4 \mathrm{C}+4 \mathrm{~L}$

300 units of output require $3(2 \mathrm{C}+2 \mathrm{~L})=6 \mathrm{C}+6 \mathrm{~L}$


Fig. 3.1.9.1 Constant Returns to Scale
Increasing Returns to Scale: The distance between successive multiple isoquants along the expansion path ( OR in the figure) decreases (i.e. $\mathrm{OA}>\mathrm{AB}>\mathrm{BC}$ as shown in the diagram). It means by doubling inputs (Labour \& Capital), output is more than doubled. In other words, to get equal increases in output, lesser proportionate increases in both the inputs (labour \& Capita) are required. In this case the Production function is homogeneous of degree greater than one. The increasing returns to scale as shown in the figure indicate the facts as follows.

100 units of output require $3 \mathrm{C}+3 \mathrm{~L}$
200 units of output require $5 \mathrm{C}+5 \mathrm{~L}$
300 units of output require $6 \mathrm{C}+6 \mathrm{~L}$


Fig. 3.1.9.2 Increasing Returns to Scale

Decreasing Returns to Scale: The distance between successive multiple isoquants along the expansion path ( OR in the figure) increases (i.e. $\mathrm{OG}<\mathrm{GH}<\mathrm{HK}$ as shown in the diagram). It
means by doubling inputs (Labour \& Capital), output increases by less than twice its original level. In other words, to get equal increases in output, larger proportionate increases in both the inputs (labour \& Capita) are required. In this case the Production function is homogeneous of degree less than one. The increasing returns to scale as shown in the figure indicate the facts as follows.

100 units of output require $2 \mathrm{C}+2 \mathrm{~L}$
200 units of output require $5 \mathrm{C}+5 \mathrm{~L}$ 300 units of output require $9 \mathrm{C}+9 \mathrm{~L}$


Fig. 3.1.9.2 Decreasing Returns to Scale

### 3.1.10 Summary

The production function (PF) is of two types such as Short-run and Long-run. The Law of variable proportion explains the behavior of short-run PF whereas Returns to explain the behavior of long-run PF.

The law of variable proportion explains the behavior of TP, MP and AP curve when additional units of labour is employed against the fixed factor (i.e. Capital) with the help of three stages. Ultimately, a rational producer will choose the second stage of production where $\mathrm{MP}_{\mathrm{L}}$ is diminishing but positive.

The producer's equilibrium in long-run can be explained using Isoquant and Isocost line. The producer achieves equilibrium level of output corresponding to equilibrium amount of labour
and capital used which can be explained under two circumstances such as Minimisation of cost for a Given Output and Maximisation of output for a Given Cost. In both the cases the conditions of equilibrium will be the same such as the necessary condition is Slope of Isoquant i.e. MRTS $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{L}-\mathrm{K}}$ is equal to Slope of Isocost line i.e.W/r and the sufficient condition is Isoquant must be convex to the origin at equilibrium point. The expansion path explain the producer's equilibrium at its each point. The feasible economic region of production lies between the upper and lower ridge lines.

The returns to scale are of three types such as Constant, Increasing and decreasing returns to scale. If the proportionate change in output is equal to the change in inputs it is called constant returns to scale. If the proportionate change in output is greater than the change in inputs it is called increasing returns to scale. If the proportionate change in output is less than the change in inputs it is called decreasing returns to scale. The returns to scale can be explained with the help of Cob-Douglash PF and with the help of distance between the consecutive Isoquants on the expansion path.

### 3.1.11 Self Assessment Questions

1. Discuss the Law of Variable Proportion.
2. Discuss the conditions of producer's equilibrium under two variable case.
3. Define Isoquant. State its properties. Discuss producer's equilibrium in Long-run.
4. Write Short notes on
(a) Returns to Scale
(b) Iso-cost line
(c) Expansion path
(d) Economic Region of Production
(e) Isoquant

## Unit-4

## MARKET ANALYSIS

### 4.1 CHAPTER

## COST OF PRODUCTION

## Objectives

## After completing this chapter, you will be able to :

- Understand the cost of production
- Estimate the short-run cost and cost curve
- Draw and analyze the Long-run Average Cost Curve


## Structure:

4.1.1 Cost of Production: Social and private costs of production
4.1.2 Short run Cost and Cost Curve
4.1.3 Long run Average Cost Curve and its implications.
4.1.4 Summary
4.1.5 Self Assessment Questions

### 4.1.1 Private and Social Costs of Production

The distinction between Private and Social costs of production is important to understand for assessing the socially efficient rate of output to be produced in an economy.

Private costs refer to direct costs to the producer for producing the good or service. For instance, Private costs for a producer of a good, service, or activity include the costs the firm pays to purchase capital equipment, hire labor, and buy materials or other inputs. Private costs to firms or individuals do not always equate with the total cost to society (social costs) for a product, service, or activity. The difference between private costs and total costs to society of a product, service, or activity is called an external cost (externalities). The pollution (negative externalities) due to production activities is an example of external cost. External costs are directly associated with producing or delivering a good or service, but they are costs that are not paid directly by the producer. In other words, External costs (or
externalities) are not reflected on firms' financial statements as it is paid by the third party i.e. the society. So due to external costs ( or Externalities) market failures and economic inefficiencies may result at the local, state, national, and even international level. Thus, the external costs must be included in the social costs to ensure that society operates at a socially efficient rate of output. Hence, Social costs include both the private costs and any other external costs to society arising from the production of a good or service.

Private Costs $=$ Social Costs - External Costs

Social Costs $=$ Private Costs + External Costs

If external costs > 0, then private costs < social costs or social costs > private costs

## Implications of Social \& Private Costs

A socially efficient output rate in a competitive market is reached when social costs (both private and external costs) are considered in production. The existence of external costs has implications for product prices, output levels, resource usage, and competition. When significant external costs are associated with a good (or service), then the price of the good is too low (because external costs are not being paid) and its output level is too high, relative to the socially efficient rate of output for the good. Thus bottom line, unless costs and prices include external costs, the market will not produce a socially efficient result as shown in the figure 4.1.1

In the figure 4.1.1 the intersection of the demand curve and marginal Social cost curve represents the socially efficient rate of production in a competitive market i.e. at point S corresponding to output Os and price Ps. Here the marginal social cost curve equals the marginal private cost curve plus the marginal external cost curve. The comparison of prices and outputs as to how external costs affect resource allocation reveals that if a firm pays only the private costs and avoids paying the external costs associated with their product, then output and prices would be determined at point P where the marginal private cost curve meets the demand curve. At P price equals Pp and output equals Op . From a resource standpoint, the important point of this comparison is that including the marginal external costs of production and allocating resources based on the full social cost results in a higher price for the good ( $\mathrm{Ps}>\mathrm{Pp}$ ) and less output ( $\mathrm{Os}<\mathrm{Op}$ ) than only including the private costs. Lower output typically would also reduce the amount of pollution generated by the activity.


Fig. 4.1.1 Social Costs (Private + external costs) Results in higher price, lower Output and efficient resource use

In economics, the external or indirect costs which lead to inefficiencies in the market and result in a difference between the private costs and the social costs are called externalities. Thus, social costs are the costs pertaining to the transaction costs to the society as a whole. Generally, it is easier to represent social costs in marginal terms i.e. marginal social cost. Marginal social cost refers to the total costs that the society pays for the production of an extra unit of the good or service in question. Symbolically, it can be represented by Marginal Social Cost $(\mathrm{MSC})=$ Marginal Private Cost $(\mathrm{MPC})+$ Marginal External Costs (MEC). The implications of Social costs can be viewed in two ways such as Negative Production Externality and Positive Production Externality as illustred below and depicted in figure 4.1.1.1 and 4.1.1.2 respectively.

Negative Production Externality refers to a situation in which Marginal Social Cost being greater than the Marginal Private Cost i.e. MSC > MPC. It means the production of the firm reduces the well-being of the people in the society who are not compensated for the same indicating a situation of over production. For instance, steel production results in a negative externality because of the marginal damages pertaining to pollution and negative environmental effects. One of the public sector remedies for internalizing externalities is a corrective tax. According to neoclassical economist Arthur Pigou, in order to correct this
market failure (or externality) the government should levy a tax which equals to marginal damages per unit. This would effectively increase the firm's private marginal cost so that SMC = PMC. However, the government intervention in correcting an externality has been debated. Economists like Ronald Coase contend that the market can internalize an externality and provide for an external outcome through bargaining among affected parties.

Similarly, positive production externality occurs when the social costs of production are lower than the marginal private costs of production i.e. MSC < MPC. It means the production of the firm increases the well-being of the people in the society who are compensated for the same indicating a situation of under production. For example, the social benefit of research and development not only applies to the profits made by the firm but also helps improve the health of society through better quality of life, lower healthcare costs, etc. In this case, the marginal social cost curve would shift downwards and there would be underproduction. In this case, government intervention would result in a Pigouvian subsidy in order to decrease the firm's private marginal cost so that MPC $=\mathrm{SMC}$.


Fig. 4.1.1.1 Resource allocation under Negative Externality


Fig. 4.1.1.2 Resource allocation under Positive Externality

### 4.1.2 Short-run Cost and Cost Curves

In the theory of firm Total cost (TC) i.e.TC=Average Cost (AC) x No. of Units produced (Q) can be split into two groups such as total fixed cost and total variable cost. Symbolically,

TC $=$ Total Fixed Cost (TFC) + Total Variable Cost (TVC)
Fixed Cost is the cost which is fixed irrespective of the level of output produced, subject to capacity constraint of the plant. Whereas, Variable Cost is the cost that varies with the variation in the level of output produced.

The fixed costs include: salaries of administrative staff, depreciation ( wear \& tear) of machinery, expenses for building \& repairs, expenses for land maintenance \&depreciation (if any) and the normal profit, which is lump sum including a percentage return on fixed capita and allowance for risk etc.

The variable costs include: the raw materials, the cost of direct labour and the running expenses of fixed capital, such as fuel, ordinary repairs and routine maintenance etc.

The Marginal Cost (MC) is an addition to total cost by producing an additional unit of output i.e. $\quad M C=\frac{d T C}{d Q}$. So, MC is the slope of TC. The Average Cost (AC) is obtained by dividing the TC by the corresponding level of output $\mathrm{AC}=\frac{\mathrm{TC}}{\mathrm{Q}}=\frac{\mathrm{TFC}+\mathrm{TVC}}{\mathrm{Q}}=\mathrm{AFC}+\mathrm{AVC}$
where the Average Variable Cost (AVC) and Average Fixed Cost (AFC) are obtained by dividing the TVC and TFC by the corresponding level of output respectively. Symbolically, $A V C=\frac{T V C}{Q}$ and $A F C=\frac{T F C}{Q}$.

The Total cost (TC) obtained from the sum of Fixed Cost (FC) and variable Cost (VC) can graphically be depicted as follows (Figure 4.1.2). The FC is denoted by the horizontal line and the Variable cost has broadly an inverse-S shape which reflects the law of variable proportion. By adding the FC and VC we obtain the TC of the firm as shown in figure 4.1.2.


Fig. 4.1.2 Fixed Cost, Variable Cost and Total Cost

The average cost curves such as AFC, AVC and AC besides MC (i.e. slope of TC) obtained from TC can be depicted as follows (figure 4.1.2.1). Graphically, the AFC is rectangular hyperbola, showing at all points the same magnitude, that is, the level of TFC. In short-run the cost curves like AVC, AC and MC are U-shaped, reflecting the law of variable proportions. In the short-run with a fixed plant there is a phase of increasing productivity (falling unit costs) and a decreasing productivity ( increasing unit costs) of the variable factor(s). Between these two phases of plant operation there is a single point at which unit costs (average costs) are at minimum. When this point on the AC is reached the plant is utilized optimally, that is, with the optimal combination (proportions) of fixed and variable factors.

The relationship between MC and AC reveals that when MC decreases, AC also decreases. The MC curve reaches its minimum point prior to that of AC. When MC increases AC also increase but the increase in MC is higher than that of AC as shown in figure 2.2.2.1.


Fig. 4.1.2.1 AFC, AVC, AC \& MC

### 4.1.3 Long Run Average Cost: The 'Envelope' Curve

In the long run all factors are assumed to become variable. Thus the long-run cost curve is said as a planning curve, in the sense that it is a guide to the entrepreneur in his decision to plan the future expansion of his output.

The long-run cost curve is derived from the short-run cost curves. Each point on the LAC corresponds to a point on a short-run cost curve, which is tangent to the LAC at that point.


Fig. 4.1.3 Deriving Long-Run Average Cost Curve from Short-Run Average cost Curves

The Long Run Average Cost (LAC) curve of a firm shows the minimum or lowest average total cost at which a firm can produce any given level of output in the long run (when all inputs are variable).

## Why is the average cost curve U shaped in the long run?

The long run cost curves are U - shaped (flatter u shaped) for different reasons. It is due to economies of scale and diseconomies of scale. If a firm has high fixed costs, increasing output will lead to lower average costs. However, after a certain output, a firm may experience diseconomies of scale.

## Why is LAC curve known as envelope curve?

In the long-run, the firm can choose among different possible sizes of plant as determined by short run average cost curves such as $\mathrm{SAC}_{1}, \mathrm{SAC}_{2}$ and $\mathrm{SAC}_{3}$. The LAC-curve is Flatter Ushaped and it is often called the 'envelope curve' because it 'envelopes' the SAC curves.

## Why does LAC fall in the beginning: Economies of Scale

The question is why we first get increasing returns to scale due to which long-run average cost falls and why after a certain point we get decreasing returns to scale due to which longrun average cost rises. In other words, what are the reasons that the firm first enjoys internal economies of scale and then beyond a certain point it has to suffer internal diseconomies of scale? Three main reasons have been given for the economies of scale which accrue to the firm and due to which cost per unit falls in the beginning.

First, as the firm increases its scale of operations, it becomes possible to use more specialized and efficient form of all factors, especially capital equipment and machinery. For producing higher levels of output, there is generally available a more efficient machinery which when employed to produce a large output yields a lower cost per unit of output.

Secondly, when the scale of operations is increased and the amount of labour and other factors becomes larger, introduction of a great degree of division of labour or specialisation becomes possible and as a result the long-run cost per unit declines.

Thus, when the short-run cost decreases (the downward sloping segment of the short-run average cost curve) occur due to the fact that the ratio of the variable input comes nearer to the optimum proportion, decrease in the long-run average cost (downward segment of the long-run average cost curve) take place due to the use of more efficient forms of machinery and other factors and to the introduction of a greater degree of division of labour in the productive process.

## Indivisibility of Factors:

Some economists explain economies of scale as arising from the imperfect divisibility of factors. In other words, they think that the economies of scale occur and therefore the longrun average cost falls because of the 'indivisibility' of factors.

They argue that most of the factors are 'lumpy', that is, they are available in large indivisible units and can therefore yield lower cost of production when they are used to produce a larger output. If a small output is produced with these costly indivisible units of the factors, the average cost of production will naturally be high.

If the factors of production were perfectly divisible, then, according to them, suitable adjustment in the factors could be made so that the optimum proportions between the factors were maintained even for producing small amounts of output and hence the average cost of production would not have been higher.

Thus, according to them, if the factors were perfectly divisible, the small-scale production would be as good and efficient as the large-scale production and the economies of scale would be non-existent. Thus, Joan Robinson remarks, "If all the factors were finely divisible, like sand, it would be possible to produce the smallest output of any commodity with all the advantages of large-scale industry."

## Why does LAC Rise Eventually: Diseconomies of Scale:

As noted above, beyond a certain point the long-run average cost curve rises which means that the long-run average cost increases as output exceeds beyond a certain point. In other words, beyond a certain point a firm experiences net diseconomies of scale.

There is also divergence of views about the proper explanation for this upward sloping of the long-run average cost curve. The first view as held by Chamberlin and his followers is that when the firm has reached a size large enough to allow the utilisation of almost all the possibilities of division of labour and the employment of more efficient machinery, further increases in the size of the plant will entail higher long-run unit cost because of the difficulties of management. When the scale of operations exceeds a certain limit, the management may not be as efficient as when the scale of operations is relatively small.

After a certain sufficiently large size these inefficiencies of management more than offset the economies of scale and thereby bring about an increase in the long-run average cost and make the LAC curve upward-sloping after a point.

It should be noted that the above view considers the entrepreneurial or managerial functions to be divisible and variable while explaining the diseconomies of scale or the rising part of the long-run average cost curve as it arises from the mounting difficulties of management (i.e. of supervision and coordination) beyond a certain sufficiently large-scale of operations.

The second view considers the entrepreneur to be a fixed indivisible factor. In this view, though all other factors can be increased, the entrepreneur cannot be. The entrepreneur, his functions of decision-making and ultimate control is indivisible which cannot be increased. Therefore, when a point is reached where the abilities of the fixed and indivisible entrepreneur are best utilised, further increases in the scale of operations by increasing other inputs cause the cost per unit of output to rise.

In other words, there is a certain optimum proportion between an entrepreneur and other inputs and when that optimum proportion is reached, further increases in the other inputs to the fixed entrepreneur means the proportion between the inputs is moved away from the optimum and, therefore, these results in the rise in the long-run average cost.

Thus, in this view, increases in the long-run average cost are explained by the law of variable proportions. Economists who hold this view think that the decreasing returns to scale or rising long-run average cost is actually a special case of variable proportions with entrepreneur as the fixed factor.

## Economies of Scale \& Economies of Scope

Economies of scale for a firm involve reductions in the average cost (cost per unit) arising from increasing the scale of production for a single product type, whereas economies of scope involve lowering average cost by producing more types of products.


Fig. 4.1.3.1 Implications of Long-Run Average Cost (LRAC) Curve

## Economies of Scale

The Economies of scale is an economics term that describes a competitive advantage that large entities have over smaller entities. It means that the larger the business, non-profit or government, the lower its costs. For example, the cost of producing one unit is less when many units are produced at once.

## Types of Economies of Scale

There are two main types of economies of scale: internal and external.

Internal economies are, as the name implies, internal to the company itself and controllable by management. External economies are supported by external factors. These factors include the industry, geographic location or government.

## Economies of Scope

Economies of scope occur when a company branches out into multiple product lines. When companies broaden their scope, they benefit by combining complementary business functions, product lines or manufacturing processes. For example, most newspapers
diversified into similar product lines, such as magazines and online news, to diversify their revenue from declining newspaper sales. They achieved some economies of scope by taking advantage of their advertising sales teams, who could sell advertising in all three product lines.

$$
S=\frac{C(Q a)+C(Q b)-C(Q a+Q b)}{C(Q a+Q b)}
$$

In the formula, $\mathrm{C}\left(\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{a}}\right)$ is the cost of producing the quantity $\mathrm{q}_{\mathrm{a}}$ of good a separately, and C $\left(\mathrm{Q}_{b}\right)$ is the cost of producing the quantity $\mathrm{q}_{\mathrm{b}}$ of good $b$ separately. Economies of scope, S , measures the percentage cost saving that occurs when the goods $a$ and $b$ are produced together.

### 4.1.4 Summary

The Private cost is quite distinct from the social cost as the social cost is the sum of private cost and external cost. The difference between private costs and total costs to society of a product, service, or activity is called an external cost (externalities).If the marginal social cost is greater than marginal social benefit it indicates overproduction and if the marginal social cost is less than marginal social benefit it indicates underproduction as MSC=MSB is social optimal condition for resource utilization and production.

The total cost of production (TC) is the sum of fixed costs and variable costs. The fixed cost is the cost which is fixed irrespective of the level of production whereas variable cost (VC) varies with the level of production. The Marginal cost of production (MC) is an addition to TC by producing an additional unit of output (Q). So MC is the slope of TC. The Average cost ( AC ) of production is equal to TC/Q. The average variable cost (AVC) is equal to VC/Q. The shape of Short-run Average cost curve is ' U ' shape as the capital in short-run PF is fixed. The Long run Average cost (LAC) curve involves many short-run average cost (SAC) curves and hence LAC curve is known as envelop curve having 'flatter U' shape. The decreasing portion of LAC (otherwise known as increasing returns to scale) is due to the operation of economies of scale and the increasing portion of LAC (otherwise known as decreasing returns to scale) is due to the operation of diseconomies of scale. In long-run a rational producer will always try to produce at the minimum point of LAC curve.

### 4.1.5 Self Assessment Questions

1. Define Social Cost. Discuss its implication for efficient resource allocation.
2. Why LAC curve is known as Envelop Curve? Discuss the causes for the decreasing and increasing portions of LAC curve.
3. Discuss the various concepts of cost and cost curves in short-run.
4. Write short notes on :
(a) Relationship between SAC and SMC
(b) Private cost and Social Cost
(c) Economies of Scale and Diseconomies of Scale
(d) Economies of Scope

### 4.2 CHAPTER

## PERFECT COMPETITION

## Objectives

## After completing this chapter, you will be able to:

- Understand the features of perfect competition
- Estimate the demand and supply curve of the perfectly competitive firm and industry
- Understand the Short-run and Long-run equilibrium of the firm and industry under perfect competition
- Measure producer surplus under perfect competition


## Structure:

4.2.1 Perfect competition: Concept and Assumptions
4.2.2 Demand Curve of a Firm
4.2.3 Supply Curve of Firm and Industry-Short run and Long-run
4.2.4 Equilibrium of the firm in Short-run
4.2.5 Equilibrium of the Industry in Short-run
4.2.6 Equilibrium of the firm in Long-run
4.2.7 Equilibrium of the Industry in Long-run
4.2.8 Measuring producer surplus under perfect competition
4.2.9 Summary
4.2.10 Self Assessment Questions

### 4.2.1 Perfect Competition

Perfect competition is a market structure characterised by a complete absence of rivalry among the individual firms. Thus, in theory, perfect competition implies no rivalry among firms. If we will see from the close we will find that in real life "Perfect Competition is a pure myth."

A market is said to be perfectly competitive provided the following characteristics is observed.

## Characteristics (or Assumptions) of Perfect Competition:

1. Large Number of Buyers and Sellers
2. Homogeneity of the Product
3. Free Entry and Exit of Firms
4. No Government intervention
5. Perfect Mobility of the Factors of Production
6. Perfect Knowledge of the Market
7. Absence of Transaction Cost

### 4.2.2 Demand Curve of a firm

The demand curve of a firm is horizontal in shape due to the existence of large number of buyers and sellers and homogeneity of the product. The industry is price maker but the firm is price taker as shown in the following figures.


Fig. 4.2.2 Demand Curve of a Firm

### 4.2.3 Supply Curve of a firm and an Industry in short-run

The upward slopping portion of the Marginal Cost Curve (i.e. the portion of Marginal Cost Curve that lies above the Average Variable Cost) in short-run is called as the supply curve of a firm as depicted in figure 4.2 .3 whereas the horizontal summation of the supply curves of the firms constitute supply curve of an industry which is also upward slopping as shown in the figure 4.2.3.1(b).

In short-run a firm will not supply at a price below its minimum average variable cost as because in short-run a firm must try to cover its variable cost at least. Hence, short run supply curve of a firm coincides with that potion of short run Marginal Cost curve which lies above the minimum point of Average Variable Cost (AVC) curve in short run. The supply curve of
the industry is the horizontal summation of the supply curves of the firms. Thus the industry supply curve is also upward sloping derived from the upward portion of the MC curves lying above the minimum point of AVC as shown in figure 4.2.3.1. It is observed from the figure 4.2.3 and 4.2.3.1 that the upward portion of the MC curves lying above the minimum point of AVC shows a direct relation between the price and quantity supplied. Nothing will be supplied below the price $\mathrm{P}_{0}$ or below the minimum point of Short run Average Variable cost (SAVC)


Fig. 4.2.3 Supply Curve of a Firm in Short - run


Fig. 4.2.3.1 Deriving Short run Supply Curve of an Industry

## Long run Supply Curve of a Firm

The portion of upward sloping Marginal Cost (MC) curve that lies above the minimum point of Average Cost (AC) curve forms the Supply Curve of a firm in long run as at equilibrium point of a firm (as shown in figure 4.2.3.2) Price $(\mathrm{P})=\mathrm{MC}=\mathrm{AC}$ corresponding to the equilibrium level of output Q . Thus the long-run supply curve of a firm is upward sloping. In long-run the industry will be in equilibrium when all firms in the industry are making normal profit i.e. $\mathrm{P}=\mathrm{MC}=\mathrm{AC}$. However, the supply curve of the industry in long run takes different shape depending upon the returns to scale in operation as discussed subsequently.


Fig. 4.2.3.2 Supply Curve of a Firm in Long - run

## Supply Curve of Industry in Long-run

The short-run supply curve of the industry always slopes upward to the right. But the shape or slope of Supply Curve of the industry (Horizontal of Upward or Downward) in Long-run will depend on whether the industry is subject to the law of Constant Return (i.e. Constant Cost Industry) or to Diminishing Return (i.e. Increasing Cost Industry) or Increasing Return (i.e. Decreasing cost Industry). However, the long run upward sloping supply curve is more typical in the real world situation.

## Supply Curve of Constant Cost Industry

The figure 4.2.3.3 (a) relates to a firm in long run which shows corresponding to equilibrium point R , at the output $\mathrm{OM}, \mathrm{P}=\mathrm{LMC}=\mathrm{LAC}$ (normal profit). The figure 4.2.3.3 (b) shows the Long-run supply curve (i.e. horizontal in shape) of a constant cost industry corresponding to price OP. In constant cost industry the cost of production does not change (the economies and diseconomies of scale cancel out) despite the change in output. Thus the industry can supply
any amount of output at a given price OP earning normal profits (i.e. $\mathrm{P}=\mathrm{LMC}=\mathrm{LAC}$ as all firms have identical cost conditions). Hence, in case of a constant cost industry, the Long-run Supply Curve (LSC) as shown in figure 3.1.3.3 (b) is Horizontal to OX axis (Perfectly elastic) at the price OP, which is equal to the minimum average cost. It means that whatever the output supplied, the price would remain the same.


Fig. 4.2.3.3 Long-run Supply Curve of a Constant Cost Industry

## Supply Curve of Increasing Cost Industry

The figure 4.2.3.4 (a) shows the position of individual firms in long run which shows the shift in equilibrium position due to shift in Price at different level of output and corresponding to each of the price level Price=LMC=LAC (normal profit). The figure 4.2.3.4 (b) shows the Long-run supply curve (i.e. Upward in shape) of an increasing cost industry where it is observed that more quantity is supplied with higher price (i.e. output $\mathrm{ON}_{1}$ at price $\mathrm{OP}_{1}>$ output ON at price OP). Hence, for an increasing cost industry, the Long-run Supply Curve (LSC) as shown in figure 4.2.3.4 (b) is upward sloping.

In case of increasing cost industry the cost of production increases (the external diseconomies outweight the external economies of scale) with the increase in output. The increase in the production (may be to meet the growing demand) results in the increase in cost of factors of production and hence the price of output. So, more will be supplied at higher prices. Thus the Supply curve is Upward sloping in this case.


Fig. 4.2.3.4 Long-run Supply Curve of a Increasing Cost Industry

## Supply Curve of Decreasing Cost Industry

The figure 4.2.3.5 (a) shows the position of individual firms in long run which shows the shift in equilibrium position due to shift in Price at different level of output and corresponding to each of the price level Price=LMC=LAC (normal profit). The figure 4.2.3.5 (b) shows the Long-run supply curve (i.e. Downward in shape) of a decreasing cost industry where it is observed that more quantity is supplied with lower price (i.e. output $\mathrm{ON}_{1}$ at price $\mathrm{OP}_{1}>$ output ON at price OP ). It means when price decreases from OP to $\mathrm{OP}_{1}$, the output supplied increases from ON to $\mathrm{ON}_{1}$. Hence, for a decreasing cost industry, the Long-run Supply Curve (LSC) as shown in figure 4.2.3.5 (b) is downward sloping.

In case of decreasing cost industry the cost of production decreases (the economies of scale out-weight the diseconomies of scale) with the increase in output. If the supply of factors of production is plentiful for increasing the production, the cost of production decreases and hence the price of output also decreases. So, more will be supplied at lower prices. Thus the Supply curve is Downward sloping in this case.


Fig. 4.2.3.5 Long-run Supply Curve of a Decreasing Cost Industry

### 4.2.4 Equilibrium of a Firm in Short-run:

The equilibrium price $(\mathrm{P})$ and output $(\mathrm{M})$ of a firm is determined at the point of equilibrium E. A point is said to be an equilibrium point of a perfectly competitive (PC) firm provided the two conditions are satisfied such as $\mathbf{1} . \mathbf{M C}=\mathbf{M R}$ and $2 . \operatorname{MC}$ cut MR from below (i.e. slope of MC > slope of MR). The profit or loss of a firm corresponding to equilibrium point depends on the positioning of short-run Average cost curves as shown in the figures 4.2.4 (a) and 4.2.4 (b). The profit $($ PHFE $)=$ OMEP (Total Revenue) - OMFH (Total Cost) as shown in fig. 4.2.4 (a) and in the same way loss ( $\mathrm{P}^{\prime} \mathrm{E}^{\prime} \mathrm{F}^{\prime} \mathrm{H}^{\prime}$ ) is shown in fig. 4.2.4 (b). Further, corresponding to equilibrium point and under situation of loss, a firm is may shut-down its operation at a point where the revenue is just sufficient to cover its AVC (Average Variable cost) as shown in the figure 4.2.4 (c).


Fig. 4.2.4 (a) Short-run Equilibrium of a firm with Profit


Fig. 4.2.4 (b) Short-run Equilibrium of a firm with Loss


Fig. 4.2.4 (C) Shut-down point of a firm with Loss

### 4.2.5 Equilibrium of the Industry in Short-Run

Given the market demand and the market supply the industry is in equilibrium at that price which clears the market i.e. at the price at which quantity demanded is equal to quantity supplied. In the figure 4.2 .5 the industry is in equilibrium at price P , at which the quantity demanded and supplied is Q . However, this will be a short-run equilibrium, if at the prevailing price firms are making excess profit (panel B of fig. 4.2.5) or losses (Panel C of
fig. 4.2.5). In the long-run, firms that make losses and cannot readjust their plant will close down. Those that make excess profit will expand their capacity, while excess profits will also attract new firms into the industry. Entry, exit and readjustment of the remaining firms in the industry will lead to a long-run equilibrium in which firms will just be earning normal profits and there will be no entry or exit from the industry.


Fig. 4.2.5 Short-run Equilibrium of the Industry

### 4.2.6 Equilibrium of the Perfectly Competitive Firm in Long-Run

In the long run firms are in equilibrium when they have adjusted their plant so as to produce at the minimum point of their Long-run Average Cost (LAC) curve, which is tangent (at equilibrium point) to the demand curve defined by the market price. In the long run the firms will be earning just normal profits, which are included in the LAC.

If they are making excess profits new firms will be attracted in the industry; this will lead to a fall in price (a down- ward shift in the individual demand curves) and an upward shift of the cost curves due to the increase of the prices of factors as the industry expands.

These changes will continue until the LAC is tangent to the demand curve defined by the market price. If the firms make losses in the long run they will leave the industry, price will rise and costs may fall as the industry contracts, until the remaining firms in the industry cover their total costs inclusive of the normal rate of profit.

In figure 4.2.6 (a) it is shown how firms adjust to their long-run equilibrium position. If the price is $P$, the firm is making excess profits working with the plant whose cost is denoted by $S A C_{1}$. It will therefore have an incentive to build new capacity and it will move along its LAC. At the same time new firms will be entering the industry attracted by the excess profits. As the quantity supplied in the market increases (by the increased production of expanding old firms and by the newly established ones) the supply curve in the market will shift to the right and price will fall until it reaches the level of $\mathrm{P}_{1}$ as shown in figure 4.2.6 (b) at which the firms and the industry are in long-run equilibrium. The LAC in figure 4.2 .6 (a) is the final-cost curve including any increase in the prices of factors that may have taken place as the industry expanded.


Fig. 4.2.6 (b)


Fig. 4.2.6 (a)

The condition for the long-run equilibrium of the firm is that the marginal cost be equal to the price and to the long-run average cost i.e. $\mathrm{LMC}=\mathrm{LAC}=\mathrm{P}$.

The firm adjusts its plant size so as to produce that level of output at which the LAC is the minimum possible, given the technology and the prices of factors of production. At equilibrium the short-run marginal cost is equal to the long-run marginal cost and the shortrun average cost is equal to the long-run average cost. Thus, given the above equilibrium condition, we have $\mathrm{SMC}=\mathrm{LMC}=\mathrm{LAC}=\mathrm{LMC}=\mathrm{P}=\mathrm{MR}$.

This implies that at the minimum point of the LAC the corresponding (short-run) plant is worked at its optimal capacity, so that the minima of the LAC and SAC coincide. On the other hand, the LMC cuts the LAC at its minimum point and the SMC cuts the SAC at its minimum point. Thus at the minimum point of the LAC the above equality between short-run and long-run costs is satisfied.

### 4.2.7 Equilibrium of the industry in the long run:

The industry is in long-run equilibrium when a price is reached at which all firms are in equilibrium (producing at the minimum point of their LAC curve and making just normal profits). Under these conditions there is no further entry or exit of firms in the industry, given the technology and factor prices. The long-run equilibrium of the industry is shown in figure 4.2.7. At the market price, P , the firms produce at their minimum cost, earning just normal profits. The firm is in equilibrium because at the level of output $\mathrm{X}, \mathrm{LMC}=\mathrm{SMC}=\mathrm{P}=\mathrm{MR}$. This equality ensures that the firm maximizes its profit. At the price $P$ the industry is in equilibrium because profits are normal and all costs are covered so that there is no incentive for entry or exit. That the firms earn just normal profit (neither excess profits nor losses) is shown by the equality $\mathrm{LAC}=\mathrm{SAC}=\mathrm{P}$, which is observed at the minimum point of the LAC curve. With all firms in the industry being in equilibrium and with no entry or exit, the industry supply remains stable, and, given the market demand (DD' in figure 4.2.7), the price $P$ is a long-run equilibrium price.


Fig. 4.2.7 Long-run Equilibrium of the Industry

Since the price in the market is unique, this implies that all firms in the industry have the same minimum long-run average cost. This, however, does not mean that all firms are of the same size or have the same efficiency, despite the fact that their LAC is the same in equilibrium.

### 4.2.8 Measuring producer surplus under perfect competition

Producer's surplus is the difference between the market price at which producers sell the quantity of a commodity and the minimum price at which they would be willing to supply it.

In other words Producer surplus (PS) is defined as the difference between the actual amount a producer receives ( at market price) by selling a given quantity of a commodity and the minimum amount that he expects to receive for the same quantity of a commodity (indicated by the marginal cost of production) to cover the cost of production. It means it is the excess of money receipts of a producer over the minimum supply price at which he is willing to sell rather than forgo the sale. It is given by area above the supply curve and below the market price as shown in figure 4.2.8. As per definition, Producer Surplus $=$ Revenue- Variable Cost., which is different from profit as Profit $=$ Revenue $-($ Fixed cost + Variable cost $)=$ Producer Surplus - Fixed Cost. Thus Producer surplus is always greater than profit.


Fig. 4.2.8 The Concept of Producer Surplus

In Figure 4.2.8 where demand curve DD and supply curve SS of a commodity intersect at point E and determine OP as the market price and OQ as the quantity sold and bought. However, as is indicated by the supply curve SS the producers will be ready to supply the earlier successive units at much less than the market price OP. The area OSEQ below the supply curve is indicator of the aggregate supply price of OQ units of the commodity produced and supplied by the producers. On the other hand, the total revenue earned by the producer is equal to the area OPEQ (market price OP x quantity OQ sold). Thus, the producers earn revenue equal to the shaded area SEP more than the aggregate supply price. The excess amount SEP over the aggregate supply price is the aggregate producer surplus earned by the producers. The producer surplus earned by the producers is the measure of benefits obtained by them for producing and exchanging the commodity.

## Producer Surplus for a Firm

The following figure 4.2 .8 .1 shows producer surplus of a perfectly competitive firm. The profit maximizing output is $\mathrm{q}^{*}$, where $\mathrm{P}=\mathrm{MC}$ ( P is the Demand Curve of a perfectly competitive firm i.e. $\mathrm{P}=\mathrm{AR}=\mathrm{MR}$ ). The Producer Surplus is given by the area ABCD i.e. the area above the MC (supply) curve and below the firm's demand curve, from zero output to the profit maximizing output $\mathrm{q}^{*}$. The Producer Surplus can also be defined as the difference between the firm's revenue ( $\mathrm{OAB} \mathrm{q}^{*}$ ) and its total variable cost ( $\mathrm{ODC} \mathrm{q}^{*}$ ). Thus, it can be represented as $A B C D=O A B q^{*}-O D C q^{*}$ as shown in fig. 4.2.8.1.


Fig. 4.2.8.1 Producer Surplus of a firm

## Producer Surplus for a Market

Producer Surplus for a Market is obtained by summing up the Producer Surplus of all the firms as shown in fig. 4.2.8.2. by the shaded area (APE). Here, higher cost firms have less producer surplus and lower cost firms have more. When price falls below the minimum of the most efficient firm (the one having the lowest minimum of AVC), no output will be supplied in the market.


Fig. 4.2.8.2 Producer Surplus of a Market

### 4.2.9 Summary

Perfect competition is a market structure characterised by a complete absence of rivalry among the individual firms. A market is said to be perfectly competitive provided it has the characteristics like Large Number of Buyers and Sellers, Homogeneity of the Product, Free Entry and Exit of Firms, No Government intervention, Perfect Mobility of the Factors of Production, Perfect Knowledge of the Market, Absence of Transaction Cost.

The demand curve of perfectly competitive firm is horizontal to OX axis as it is a price taker. The firm takes the price determined by the market. Because of the large number of buyers and Sellers and homogeneity of the Product, no single buyer or seller can influence the market price.

The supply curve of the firm in short-run is the increasing portion of its MC curve (upward sloping having positive slope). The horizontal summation of the supply curve of the firms constitutes the industry's supply curve in short-run. However, in long r-run the supply curve horizontal, upward sloping and downward sloping for constant, increasing and decreasing cost industry respectively.

The firm in short-run achieves its equilibrium (price \& output decision) at a point where $\mathrm{MC}=\mathrm{MR}$ and MC curve cut MR curve from below. Corresponding to the equilibrium price and output, the profit and loss of the firm depends on the positioning of its Average Cost curve. If the short-run average cost curve positioned below the average revenue, the firm will earn profit whereas if the short-run average cost curve positioned above the average revenue, the firm will incur loss. Further, under loss situation, if the AVC=AR (or TVC=TR), the firm will shut-down its operation. Given the market demand and the market supply the industry is in equilibrium in short-run at that price which clears the market i.e. at the price at which quantity demanded is equal to quantity supplied.

In the long run firms are in equilibrium when they have adjusted their plant so as to produce at the minimum point of their Long-run Average Cost (LAC) curve, which is tangent (at equilibrium point) to the demand curve defined by the market price. In the long run the firms will be earning just normal profits, which are included in the LAC. The industry is in longrun equilibrium when a price is reached at which all firms are in equilibrium (producing at the minimum point of their LAC curve and making just normal profits). Under these
conditions there is no further entry or exit of firms in the industry, given the technology and factor prices.

Producer's surplus is the difference between the market price at which producers sell the quantity of a commodity and the minimum price at which they would be willing to supply it The producer surplus of a perfectly competitive firm is given by the area above the MC (supply) curve and below the firm's demand curve i.e. from zero output to the profit maximizing output. The Producer Surplus can also be defined as the difference between the firm's revenue and its total variable cost. The Producer Surplus for a Market is obtained by summing up the Producer Surplus of all the firms. The higher cost firms have less producer surplus and lower cost firms have more.

### 4.2.10 Self assessment Questions

1. Define Perfect Competition. Discuss the short-run equilibrium of a firm under perfectly competition.
2. Discuss the long-run equilibrium of a firm and industry under perfect competition.
3. Explain the derivation of the supply curve of a perfectly competitive firm and industry in short-run and long-run
4. Discuss the concept producer's surplus of a perfectly competitive firm and market.
5. Write short notes on:
A. Perfect competition
B. Supply Curve of a firm and Industry in Short-run
C. Demand Curve of a perfectly competitive firm
D. Producer's Surplus under Perfect Competition

### 4.3 CHAPTER

## MONOPOLY

## Objectives

## After completing this chapter, you will be able to:

- Understand the features of Monopoly
- Understand the Short-run and Long-run equilibrium under Monopoly
- Understand the nature of Supply Curve of Monopoly
- Understand the effect of change in demand and cost on Monopoly equilibrium
- Measure Monopoly Power through various indices
- Understand the concepts of Horizontal and Vertical integration of firms
- Distinguish between Perfect competition and Monopoly


## Structure:

4.3.1 Monopoly: Concept
4.3.2 Short-Run Equilibrium under Monopoly
4.3.3 Long-Run Equilibrium under Monopoly
4.3.4 Absence of the Supply Curve in Monopoly
4.3.5 Effect of Shifts in the demand curve in Monopoly
4.3.6 Effect of the change in cost
4.3.7 Measurement of monopoly power and the rule of thumb for pricing,
4.3.8 Horizontal and vertical integration of firms
4.3.9 Differences between Monopoly and Perfect Competition
4.3.10 Summary
4.3.11 Self Assessment Questions

### 4.3.1 Monopoly

A Monopoly market has the following features.

1. Single seller but large number of buyers
2. No close substitute of the monopolist's products is available
3. Entry and Exit are restricted.

The Monopolist, unlike perfect competition, is a price maker and hence its demand curve is downward slopping. The price ( P ) and output ( q ) gets determined at the point of equilibrium where the two conditions are satisfied such as $\mathbf{1} . \mathbf{M C}=\mathbf{M R}$ and 2. MC cut MR from below (i.e. slope of MC > slope of MR). The profit or loss of a firm corresponding to equilibrium
point depends on the positioning of short-run Average cost curves as shown in the figures below.

### 4.3.2 Short-Run Equilibrium under Monopoly

Short-run refers to that period in which the monopolist has to work with given existing plant i.e. fixed factor and hence output can be changed by changing the variable factors. In shortrun, the monopolist can enjoy Super Normal Profits (figure-4.3.2), Normal Profits (figure 4.3.2.1) and sustain Losses (figure 4.3.2.2). At equilibrium point the two conditions are satisfied such as $\mathbf{1} . M C=M R$ and $2 . M C$ cut MR from below (i.e. slope of MC > slope of MR). The profit or loss of a firm corresponding to equilibrium point depends on the positioning of short-run Average cost curves.

Corresponding to equilibrium point E , if the price determined by the monopolist is more than Average Cost (AC), he will get Super Normal Profits at $\mathrm{OQ}_{1}$ level of output. Thus corresponding to the equilibrium price OA and output $\mathrm{OQ}_{1}$, the Total Revenue is $\mathrm{OQ}_{1} \mathrm{CA}$ and Total Cost is $\mathrm{OQ}_{1} \mathrm{DB}$.Hence, the Profit is BDCA as shown in figure 4.3.2.

Similarly, if the price (AR) determined by the monopolist is is equal to AC, he will get Normal profits corresponding to equilibrium point E (where the equilibrium price is OP output is $O M$ ) as shown in figure 4.3.2.1.

It is depicted in figure 4.3.2.2 that the monopolist in short-run may have to incur losses ( $\mathrm{PNAP}_{1}$ ) by the magnitude of difference between total cost (OMNP) and total revenue $\left(\mathrm{OMAP}_{1}\right)$ corresponding to equilibrium point E where equilibrium price is $\mathrm{OP}_{1}$ and output is OM. However, in short-run, if the price determined by the monopolist falls (due to depression or fall in demand etc.) below the Average Variable Cost, he will stop production. In other words, the monopolist will continue to produce as long as price covers the variable cost and hence he has to bear the minimum loss equal to fixed costs. Thus, the equilibrium price $\left(\mathrm{P}_{1}\right)$ is here equal to average variable cost (AVC) at point A as shown in fig. 4.3.2.2. If the price falls below $\mathrm{P}_{1}$ he will stop production otherwise he will bear the entire loss of PNAP ${ }_{1}$.


Fig. 4.3.2


Fig. 4.3.2. 1


Fig. 4.3.2.2

### 4.3.3 Long-Run Equilibrium under Monopoly

In the long-run monopoly has the time to expand or adjust his existing plant size at any level which will maximize his profit.

There is no any such guarantee that he will use his existing plant at optimum capacity. What is certain is that the monopolist will not stay in business if he makes losses in the long-run.

He will most probably continue to earn supernormal profits even in long-run, given that entry is barred. However, the size of his plant and the degree of utilization of any given plant size depend entirely on the 'market demand'. The monopolist may reach the optimal scale (minimum point of LAC) or remain at sub-optimal scale (falling part of his LAC) or surpass the optimal scale (expand beyond the minimum LAC) depending on the market conditions.


Fig. 4.3.3 Monopolist with suboptimal plant and excess capacity

The figure-4.3.3 depicts the case in which the market size does not permit the monopolist to expand to the minimum point of LAC. In this case not only his plant is of sub-optimal size (in the sense that the full economies of scale are not exhausted) but also the existing plant is underutilized. This is because to the left of the minimum point of LAC the SAC is tangent to the LAC at its falling portion and also because the SMC must be equal to LMC. This occurs at point $€$., while the minimum LAC is at $b$ and the optimal use of the existing plant is at point a, since it is at the level $€^{1}$, there is 'excess capacity'.

The following figure 4.3.3.1 depicts the case where the size of the market is so large that the monopolist, in order to maximize his output, must build a plant larger than the optimal and overutilised it. This is because to the right of the minimum point of LAC the SAC and the LAC are tangent at a point of their positive slope and also because SMC must be equal to LAC. Thus, the plant that maximizes the monopolist's profits leads to higher costs for two reasons such as firstly, because it is larger than the optimal size and secondly, because it is overutilised. This is often the case with public utility companies operating at national level.


Fig. 4.3.3.1 Monopolist operating in a large market: his plant is larger than the optimal ( $€$ ) and it is being overutilised $\left(a t \epsilon^{1}\right)$.

The following figure 4.3.3.2 shows the case in which the market size is just large enough to permit the monopolist to build the optimal plant and use it at full capacity.

It should be clear that the emergence of any of the above situations depends on the size of the market (given the technology of the monopolist). There is no certainty that in the long-run the monopolist will reach the optimal scale, as is the case in a purely competitive market. In monopoly there is no market forces similar to those of in pure competition which lead the firms to operate at optimum plant size (and utilize at its full capacity) in the long-run.


Fig. 4.3.3.2 Optimal use of Plant Size (at point $€$ ).

### 4.3.4 Absence of Supply Curve in Monopoly

1. There is no unique supply curve for the monopolist derived from MC, the same quantity may be offered at different prices depending on the price elasticity of demand as given below:


Fig. 4.3.4 Same quantity supplied at different prices
Figure 4.3.4 shows that the same quantity (i.e. OX) is sold or supplied at two different prices ( $\mathrm{P}_{1}$ and $\mathrm{P}_{2}$ ) on two different demand ( $\mathrm{D}_{1}$ and $\mathrm{D}_{2}$ ) respectively. Thus, there is no unique relationship between price and quantity supplied.
2. Similarly, given the MC of the monopolist, various quantities may be supplied at one price, depending on the market demand and the corresponding MR curve.


Fig. 4.3.4.1 Different quantities supplied at same prices

Figure 4.3.4.1 shows that given the costs of the monopolist, he would supply $\mathrm{OX}_{1}$ if the market demand is $D_{1}$, while at the same price $P$, he would supply only $\mathrm{OX}_{2}$ if the market demand is $\mathrm{D}_{2}$. Thus, there is no unique relationship between price and quantity supplied.

### 4.3.5 Effect of Shift in the Demand in Monopoly

An upward shift of the market demand will result in a new equilibrium in which the quantity produced will be larger, but the price may increase, remain constant or decrease. Let us examine the possibilities.

1. In the new equilibrium the price may remain constant while the quantity supplied increases.


Fig. 4.3.5 Quantity produced is larger but the price remains constant
Figure 4.3 .5 shows that assuming $D_{2}$ is the new demand curve shifted to the right of $D_{1}$, the corresponding MR curve $\mathrm{MR}_{1}$ and $\mathrm{MR}_{2}$ also shifted accordingly. Hence, given the MC curve of the monopolist, the new equilibrium position is $€^{1}$ where the price is the same as before (i.e. P), but the quantity produced is larger $\left(\mathrm{OX}_{2}>\mathrm{OX}_{1}\right)$.

As a result of the increase in quantity produced and demanded, the total revenue is found increasing $\left(\mathrm{OPBX}_{2}>\mathrm{OPAX}_{1}\right)$ and hence his profit will be larger $\left(\mathrm{PK}^{\prime} \mathrm{MB}>\mathrm{PKCA}\right)$ as the monopolist's SATC will be decreasing over the range between $X_{1}$ and $X_{2}$ as depicted in figure
4.3.5.1 . Hence, the total excess profit of the monopolist increases if the price remains constant while his demand increases ( $D_{1}$ to $D_{2}$ ) as shown in the following figure 4.1.5.1.


Fig. 4.3.5.1 Profit increases when Demand increases even if price remains constant
2. In the new equilibrium both the quantity and the price of the monopolist may be greater as compared to the initial equilibrium.


Fig. 4.3.5.2 both the quantity and price are greater than the initial equilibrium.
Figure 4.3.5.2 shows that if the demand shifts to $D_{2}$ from $D_{1}$ the new equilibrium will be at $€^{1}$, at which the price as well as quantity supplied by the monopolist are greater than that of the initial equilibrium i.e. at $€$ as depicted in this figure i.e. $\mathrm{P}_{2}>\mathrm{P}_{1}$ and $\mathrm{OX} 2>\mathrm{OX}_{1}$.
3. In the new equilibrium the price may be lower than the initial while the quantity is larger.


Fig. 4.3.5.3 Price is lower and quantity is larger than the initial equilibrium.
Figure 4.3.5.3 shows that if the demand shifts to $D_{2}$ from $D_{1}$ the new equilibrium will be at $€^{1}$ where the quantity is larger than the quantity at initial equilibrium point $€$ i.e. $\mathrm{OX}_{2}>\mathrm{OX}_{1}$ and further OX 2 will be sold at lower price $\mathrm{P}_{2}$ as compared to initial price i.e. $\mathrm{P}_{2}<\mathrm{P}_{1}$.

### 4.3.6 Effect of a Change in Cost

If the fixed costs of the monopolist increase, his short-run equilibrium will not be affected, since his demand is given and his SMC is not affected by changes in fixed costs.

But if the Variable Costs increase, the MC curve of the monopolist will shift upwards to the left with the consequence of a reduction in the output and an increase in the price as depicted in the following figure 4.3 .6 where it is observed that due to change in cost (i.e. $\mathrm{MC}_{1}$ to $\mathrm{MC}_{2}$ ) output reduces from $X_{1}$ to $X_{2}$ and price increases from $P_{1}$ to $P_{2}$.


Fig. 4.3.6 Quantity reduces and Price increases as Cost increases

### 4.3.7 Measurement of monopoly power and the rule of thumb for pricing

## Monopoly Power-Meaning

The Monopolist is the only seller in the market of his product. As the only seller, he possesses a monopolistic dominance or monopoly power in the market. But the degree of monopoly power is not the same in the case of all monopolies. The monopoly power could be measured by the extent to which price is greater than MC for each firm. Generally speaking, the less elastic is the demand for a monopolist's product, the more would be his degree of monopoly power, and vice-versa. In other words, a higher degree of monopoly power would be obtained at a smaller value of price elasticity of demand ( $e$ ) and a lower degree of monopoly power at a larger value of $e$. This idea is supported by Prof. A. P. Lerner (1903-82) for measuring the degree of monopoly power.

Lerner's Index (LI) for measuring Monopoly Power

According to Prof. Lerner, degree of monopoly power in perfect competition is zero as at equilibrium point of a competitive firm $\mathrm{P}=\mathrm{AR}=\mathrm{MR}=\mathrm{MC}$ or $\mathrm{P}=\mathrm{MC}$ or $\mathrm{P}-\mathrm{MC}=0$. On the other hand, at the equilibrium point of a monopoly firm $\mathrm{P}=\mathrm{AR}>\mathrm{MR}=\mathrm{MC}$, or, $\mathrm{P}>\mathrm{MC}$, or, $\mathrm{P}-\mathrm{MC}=$ Positive. Thus, according to Prof. Lerner, the larger the positive value of $\mathrm{P}-\mathrm{MC}$ as a proportion of P , the larger would be the degree of monopoly Power. In other words, the larger the value of Lerner's Index (between 0 and 1) the greater the monopoly power. Thus, his formula for measuring the degree of monopoly power is called as Lerner's Index arithmetically shown below

Lerner's Index of Monopoly Power $=\frac{\boldsymbol{P}-\boldsymbol{M C}}{\boldsymbol{P}}$
From the above formula it is observed that under perfect competition, the value of this index is zero as $\mathbf{P}-\mathbf{M C}=0$ whereas in Monopoly, the value of this index is Positive as $\mathrm{P}>\mathrm{MC}$.

Let us find the relationship between Lerner's Index and the price -elasticity of demand for the product.

Lerner's Index $=\frac{\boldsymbol{P}-\boldsymbol{M} \boldsymbol{C}}{\boldsymbol{P}}=\frac{\boldsymbol{P}-\boldsymbol{M} \boldsymbol{R}}{\boldsymbol{P}}$ (as MR $=\mathrm{MC}$ at equilibrium)

$$
\begin{aligned}
& =\frac{P-M R}{P}=\frac{P-P\left(1-\frac{1}{e}\right)}{P} \quad\left[\text { as MR }=P\left(1-\frac{1}{e}\right)\right] \\
& =\frac{P-P\left(1-\frac{1}{e}\right)}{P}=\frac{P\left[1-1+\frac{1}{e}\right]}{P}=\frac{1}{e}
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus, the Lerner's Index of Monopoly Power is equal to the reciprocal of the numerical value of price elasticity of demand (e) for the product of a firm, which shows that the less elastic the demand for the product, the more would be the degree of monopoly power and viceversa. In other words, the smaller the price-elasticity of demand (i.e. the value of e), smaller would be the response of demand for the product in response to a change in its price and the larger would be the power of the monopolist to charge a price in excess of MC , i.e. the larger would be the value $\mathrm{P}-\mathrm{MC}$ and hence the higher will be the value of Lerner's Index.

## Rule of Thumb for Pricing

It aims at translating the condition $\mathrm{MR}=\mathrm{MC}$ into a rule of thumb that can be more easily applied in practice. The rule of thumb for pricing can be derived as follows.
$\mathrm{MR}=\frac{\Delta R}{\Delta Q}=\frac{\Delta(P Q)}{\Delta Q}$--------(1) where, $\mathrm{R}=$ Total revenue, $\mathrm{P}=$ Price per unit, $\mathrm{Q}=$ quantity sold

Producing one more unit of out brings in the revenue as $(1)(\mathrm{P})=\mathrm{P}$. With downward sloping demand, producing and selling one more unit results in small drop in price i.e. $\frac{\Delta P}{\Delta Q}$, which will reduce revenue (from all units sold) and hence the change in revenue will be $\mathrm{Q}\left(\frac{\Delta P}{\Delta Q}\right)$. Thus,
$\mathrm{MR}=\mathrm{P}+Q \frac{\Delta P}{\Delta Q}=\mathrm{P}+\mathrm{P}\left(\frac{Q}{P}\right)\left(\frac{\Delta P}{\Delta Q}\right)$

Price elasticity of demand $(\mathrm{e})=\left(\frac{P}{Q}\right)\left(\frac{\Delta Q}{\Delta P}\right)$ $\qquad$
Thus, $\left(\frac{Q}{P}\right)\left(\frac{\Delta P}{\Delta Q}\right)=\frac{1}{e}$
$\mathrm{MR}=\mathrm{P}+\mathrm{P}\left(\frac{Q}{P}\right)\left(\frac{\Delta P}{\Delta Q}\right)=\mathrm{P}+\mathrm{P}\left(\frac{1}{e}\right)$

The profit $(\pi)$ maximization condition reveals that $\pi$ is maximized where MR=MC. Thus,

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{P}\left(\frac{1}{e}\right)=\mathrm{MC} \\
\Rightarrow & \frac{\mathrm{P}-\mathrm{MC}}{\mathrm{P}}=\frac{1}{e} \\
\Rightarrow & \mathrm{P}=\frac{M C}{1+\left(\frac{1}{e}\right)} \tag{6}
\end{align*}
$$

It refers to the Pricing for any firm with monopoly power where the Markup is small if price elasticity of demand (e) is large and the Markup is large if price elasticity of demand (e) is small which can be accessed from equation (6).
$\frac{\mathrm{P}-\mathrm{MC}}{\mathrm{P}}$ is the markup over MC as a percentage of price. The markup should equal the inverse of the elasticity of demand. As a matter of the rule of thumb, Price ( P ) is expressed directly as the markup over Marginal Cost (MC) i.e. $\mathbf{P}=\frac{M C}{1+\left(\frac{1}{e}\right)}$.
For example, Assuming $\mathrm{e}=-4, \mathrm{MC}=9, \mathbf{P}=\frac{\boldsymbol{M C}}{\mathbf{1 + (}\left(\frac{\mathbf{1}}{\boldsymbol{e}}\right)}=\frac{\mathbf{9}}{\mathbf{1 + ( \frac { 1 } { - 4 } )}}=\frac{\mathbf{9}}{\mathbf{0 . 7 5}}=$ Rs. 12
In Monopoly, $\mathrm{P}>\mathrm{MC}$ and the price is larger than MC by an amount that depends inversely on the elasticity of demand. If demand is very elastic, there is little benefit to being a monopolist whereas if demand is inelastic monopolist can increase revenue by decreasing quantity and increasing price.

Monopoly power, however, does not guarantee profits as Profit ( $\pi$ ) depends on average cost relative to price: $\pi=\mathrm{Q}(\mathrm{P}-\mathrm{AC})$ and hence a firm may have more monopoly power but lower profits due to high average costs

## Sources of Monopoly Power

Some firms have considerable monopoly power whereas others have little or none as the monopoly power is determined by ability to set price higher than marginal cost. A firm's monopoly power, therefore, is determined by the firm's elasticity of demand. The less elastic the demand curve, the more will be the monopoly power a firm. However, the degree of monopoly power determined by the following three sources:

1) Elasticity of market demand
2) Number of firms in market
3) The interaction among firms

## Elasticity of Market Demand

In pure monopoly (with one firm) there is no difference between the elasticity of firm's demand and the elasticity of market demand. Therefore, in this case, the degree of monopoly power of the firm is determined completely by elasticity of market demand for his product. However, in real world situation pure monopoly is found rare. Thus, with more firms (producing close substitute products), individual demand may differ from market demand. The demand for a firm's product is more elastic than the market elasticity of demand.

## Number of Firms

The number of firms producing the product is a determinant of the elasticity of demand for a firm's product and the elasticity of demand in turn determines the degree of its monopoly power. The monopoly power of a firm falls as the number of firms increases. The more important are the number of firms with significant market share. The market is highly concentrated if only a few firms account for most of the sales. Thus, firms would like to create barriers to entry to keep new firms out of market so as to gain more monopoly power.

## Interaction among firms

If there are several firms producing the close substitute products, then the monopoly power enjoyed by each of them would depend upon the interactions among them. If the firms compete aggressively, then they would undercut one another's prices in order to increase their respective market shares. Such aggressive competition among firms may reduce the prices of the products nearly top the level of competitive price. Hence, in this case, the degree of monopoly power of the firms would be relatively small. On the other hand, the firms might decide not to compete among themselves, rather they might collude. In this case, collusion
among the firms would restrict their outputs and increase their prices. Thus, here, the degree of their monopoly power would also be high. The collusion may behave almost like one firm (giving rise to multi-plant monopoly). In such a case, the degree of monopoly power would be to the highest possible extent.

It can thus be concluded that the monopoly power arises from the three sources such as Elasticity of market demand, Number of firms in market and The interaction among firms.

## Difficulties in obtaining the Lerner Index

a) The price elasticity of demand of a firm is equal to that of market in pure monopoly and hence if the number of firms is more it is very difficult to define elasticity rather elasticity can be inferred for each firm and hence monopoly power may not be measured accurately.
b) It is difficult to obtain the accurate information on MC and hence it can only be inferred which may not be helpful to measure monopoly power accurately.
c) It is difficult to measure the monopoly power of a firm who is a monopolist at home and perfect competitor abroad.

## Concentration Ratios (CR) as Measures of Monopoly Power:

In a industry there exist some smaller firms and some larger firms in the sense that the smaller firms have relatively smaller shares in the total industry sales (or profits or assets), and the larger firms have relatively larger shares. The sales (or profits or assets) may be more concentrated in a few firms of the industry or such concentration may be less. Thus, the size of largest firm's share or the size of smallest firm's share in total industry sales is known as the Concentration Ratio. The value of Concentration Ratio (CR) ranges from 0 to 1 ( 0 being lowest and 1 being highest).

In perfect competition, the concentration of sales is absent. But in monopoly the sales tend to concentrate on a few large firms and in case of pure monopoly sales concentrate to only one firm.

The cumulative percentage share of sales of the firms if plotted in a figure against the number of firms from largest to smallest, we obtain the concentration curve which reveals the magnitude of concentration of sales of firms in total.

However, the comparison of the concentration ratio of one firm with others possesses certain difficulty and hen determination of monopoly power is ambiguous. Further the concentration ratio calculated based on one parameter may not reflect the monopoly power of a firm if the firm is having more concentration on other parameters. The concentration ratio estimation does not take into account the number of firms in the industry while estimating the CR for different industries. The concentration ratio considers the domestic sector not the foreign sector even though the domestic sector often affected by policies of foreign sector.

## Herfindahl Index (HI) for Measuring Monopoly Power:

The Herfindahl Index (named after Orris C. Herfindahl) corrects some of the major problems Concentration Ratio (CR) method for measuring monopoly power. The HI measures the market concentration in a way that gives a great deal of weight to the share of the largest one or two firms in the market. It does so by squaring the percentage market share of each firm in the market. The HI is represented as follows:
$\mathrm{HI}=S_{1}^{2}+S_{2}^{2}+S_{3}^{2}+\cdots-\cdots--+S_{n}^{2}=\sum_{i=1}^{n} S_{i}^{2}$
Where $\mathrm{S}_{\mathrm{i}}=$ Share of i th firm ( $\mathrm{i}=1,2,3,-----\mathrm{n}$ ) in the industry
If $\mathrm{HI}=1 \Rightarrow$ The market is a Pure Monopoly (single seller)
If $\mathrm{HI}=0 \Rightarrow$ The market is Perfectly Competitive
If there are $n$ firms in an industry having equal shares, the share of each firm would be $1 / n$ and hence in this case $\mathrm{HI}=1 / n$ i.e. HI is the reciprocal of the number of firms.

The HI can be represented as $\mathrm{HI}=n \delta^{2}+\frac{1}{n}$
Thus, HI depends on two things viz. the variance of the market shares and the number of firms. If the market share is equally distributed among the firms (i.e. $\delta^{2}=0$ ), the measure of monopoly power which is given by the HI, would assume the value $1 / n$ and this is also the minimum value of the HI for a given $n$. If $n$ is large and $\delta^{2}=0$, the value of HI is small. On the other hand if $n=1$ and $\delta^{2}=0$, the value of $\mathrm{HI}=1$ (maximum value of HI ) found in the case of pure monopoly. Thus the value of HI lies between $1 / n$ and $1(1 / n \leq H I \leq 1)$ and a larger value of HI indicates a greater monopoly power.

### 4.3.8 Horizontal and Vertical integration of Firms

Horizontal integration is the process of a company increasing production of goods or services at the same part of the supply chain. Horizontal integration contrasts with Vertical
integration, where companies integrate multiple stages of production of a small number of production units.

## Difference between Horizontal and Vertical Integration

Growth and expansion are the two needs of every firm, irrespective of its size and nature. Firms can grow and expand themselves by way of integration. There are two major forms of integration, i.e. Horizontal Integration and Vertical Integration. Horizontal Integration is a kind of business expansion strategy, wherein the company acquires same business line or at the same level of value chain so as to eliminate competition to a greater extent. Conversely, Vertical Integration is used to rule over the entire industry by covering the supply chain. It implies the integration of various entities engaged in different stages of the distribution chain.

## Comparison between Horizontal and Vertical Integration

| Basis for Comparison | Horizontal Integration | Vertical Integration |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Meaning | When two firms combine, whose <br> products and production level is <br> same, then this is known as <br> Horizontal Integration. | Vertical Integration is <br> when a firm takes over <br> another firm or firms that <br> are at different stage on the <br> same production path. |
| Objective | Increasing the size of the <br> business | Strengthening the supply <br> chain |
| Consequence | Elimination of competition and <br> achieving maximum market <br> share | Reduction of cost and <br> wastage |
| Capital requirement | Higher | Lower |
| Self- Sufficiency | NO | Yes |
| Strategy used to exercise <br> control over | Market | Industry |

## Horizontal Integration

The merger of two or more firms, which are engaged in the same line of business and their activity level, is also same; then this is known as Horizontal Integration. The Product may include complementary product, by-product or any other related product, competitive product or entering into the product's repairs, services and maintenance section.

Horizontal Integration reduces competition between firms in the market; as if the producers of the product get combined they can create a Monopoly. However, it can also create an oligopoly if there are still some independent manufacturers in the market.

It is a tactic used by most of the companies to expand its size and achieve economies of scale due to increased production level. This will help the company to approach new customers and market. Moreover, the company can also diversify its products and services.

Some of the examples of horizontal integration are the acquisition of Instagram by Facebook and Burger King by McDonald's and Integration of Exxon and Mobil, Oil companies to increase market dominance is also an example of horizontal integration.

## Vertical Integration

Vertical Integration is between two firms that are carrying on business for the same product but at different levels of the production process. The firm opts to continue the business, on the same product line as it was done before integration. It is an expansion strategy used to gain control over the entire industry. There are two forms vertical integration such as Forward Integration and Backward Integration. Forward Integration: If the company acquires control over distributors, then it is downstream or forward integration. Backward Integration: When the company acquires control over its supplier, then it is upstream or backward integration.

The cause of integration is to strengthen the production-distribution chain and to minimize the cost and wastage of products at various levels. The integration also enables the company to keep upstream and downstream profits and eliminates intermediaries.

Apple is the best example of Vertical integration; it is the biggest and a renowned manufacturer of Smart phones, laptops and so on. It controls the whole production and distribution process itself, from the beginning to the end. Another example of this is Alibaba, a Chinese e-commerce company that owns the entire system of payment, delivery, search engine and much more. Firms like Mafatlal, National Textile Corporation etc. have opened up retail stores owned by them, in order to have an effective control over distribution activities are also some of the examples of vertical integration.

Thus from the above discussion it can be understood that Integration strategy is used by the firms to increase market share, become more diversified, eliminating the cost of developing new product and introducing it to the market, minimizing competition by taking over competitor's business etc.

### 4.3.9 Differences between Monopoly and Perfect Competition

## Similarities

- In both the markets the firm has a single goal, that is Profit Maximization.
- In both the markets the owner of the firms is also the manager-entrepreneur.
- In both markets the cost conditions are such as to give rise to U-shaped cost curves both in the short-run and long-run.
- In both the markets decisions are taken by applying the marginalistic rule i.e. $\mathrm{MC}=\mathrm{MR}$.


## Differences

- In perfect Competition, products are homogeneous but in monopoly it may not be homogeneous.
- In perfect competition there is large number of sellers but in monopoly there is a Single seller.
- The demand curve of a firm in perfect competition is perfectly elastic (horizontal), showing that the firm is price taker. But in monopoly the demand curve of the firm (which is also the demand curve of the industry) is downward sloping showing that the firm is price maker.
- In perfect competition there is free entry and exit, but in monopoly entry is restricted by definition.
- The only decision (or policy variable) of the firm in perfect competition is the determination of its output. But the monopolist can determine either his output or price, not both, since once one of this policy variable is decided the other is simultaneously determined.
- Under perfect competition price equals marginal cost $(\mathrm{P}=\mathrm{MC}=\mathrm{MR})$ at the equilibrium output, but in monopoly equilibrium price is greater than marginal cost ( $\mathrm{P}>\mathrm{MC}$ ). Thus, in a perfectly competitive market as price equals marginal cost, firms earn an economic profit of zero. But in a monopoly, the price is set above marginal cost and hence the firm earns a positive economic profit. Perfect competition produces an equilibrium in which the price and quantity of a good is economically efficient.
- The price elasticity of demand in equilibrium may assume any value in a perfectly competitive market. In monopoly the price elasticity (e) must be greater than unity (e
$>1$ ) in equilibrium, because if $\mathrm{e}<1$, the monopolist can increase his revenue by increasing his price.
- While an individual firm under perfect competition can attain equilibrium only under increasing cost conditions, under monopoly it can attain equilibrium under any cost condition.

While in perfect competition, equilibrium is possible only when marginal cost is rising at the point of equilibrium, in Monopoly, equilibrium can be realized whether marginal cost is rising, remaining constant or falling at the equilibrium output. This is so because the second order condition of equilibrium.i.e.MC curve should cut MR curve from below at equilibrium point can be satisfied in monopoly in all the three cases, whereas in perfect competition the second order condition is fulfilled only when MC curve is rising at equilibrium.

The following figure 4.1 .9 shows the equilibrium position of a perfectly competitive firm at point E where MC is rising and MR is horizontal to OX axis. It earns PEFG profits by selling OQ output at OP price.


Fig 4.3.9 Equilibrium of a perfectly competitive firm with rising MC
Under Monopoly, the firm can be in equilibrium with rising, falling or constant MC curve as shown in Panel (A), (B) and (C) of the figure 4.3.9.1 respectively.


Fig 4.3.9.1 Equilibrium under Monopoly with rising, falling and constant MC

The three equilibrium situations are depicted in figure 4.1.9.1. Panel (A) shows monopoly equilibrium under increasing cost condition where the rising MC curve cuts the MR curve fro below at point E . In panel (B) a downward slopping MC curve cuts MR curve from below at point E, while in Panel (C) a horizontal MC (=AC) curve cuts MR curve from below at point A. In these three situations Op is determined at which OQ output is sold. But the output OQ and profits PABC are different in each situation from the other.

- In Monopoly equilibrium price is higher and output is lower than that of under perfect competition.


Fig 4.3.9.2 Price \& Output under Monopoly and Perfect competition

Figure 4.3.9.2 shows that Monopoly equilibrium achieves at point E where OQ and OM are the equilibrium output and price respectively. Similarly, under perfect competition
equilibrium achieves at point P where $\mathrm{OQ}_{1}$ and OP are the equilibrium output and price respectively. It is observed that the monopoly output is less than perfect competition i.e. $\mathrm{OQ}_{1}$ $>\mathrm{OQ}$ and Price in monopoly is higher than perfect completion i.e. $\mathrm{Q}_{1} \mathrm{P}<\mathrm{OM}$.

- The firm in perfect competition produces at optimum cost in long-run equilibrium that is at the minimum point of the LAC curve, there are neither unexhausted economies of scale nor diseconomies of large scale production. But in monopoly there is no certainty that the monopolist will produce at minimum LAC. He may never reach the lowest point of the LAC or he may overshoot it, depending on the market size.
- The supply curve of a purely competitive firm is uniquely determined i.e. the increasing portion of its MC curve laying above the minimum point of its AVC curve. But in monopoly the supply curve is not uniquely determined as the same quantity may be offered at different prices or the same price may be charged for different quantities, depending on the demand in the market. Thus, the monopolist's MC curve is not its supply curve.
- In perfect competition there are no abnormal (or supernormal) profits in long-run. But in Monopoly abnormal or supernormal profits are usually earned both in short-run and long-run.
- Monopolist can practice price discrimination to maximize profits but a perfectly competitive firm cannot do so.


### 4.3.10 Summary

A Monopoly market has the features of Single seller but large number of buyers, No close substitute of the monopolist's products is available and Entry and Exit are restricted. The Monopolist, unlike perfect competition, is a price maker and hence its demand curve is downward slopping.

The price and output gets determined at the point of equilibrium where the two conditions are satisfied such as MC = MR and MC cut MR from below (i.e. slope of MC > slope of MR). The profit or loss of a firm corresponding to equilibrium point depends on the positioning of short-run Average cost curves.

In the long-run monopoly has the time to expand or adjust his existing plant size at any level which will maximize his profit. There is no any such guarantee that he will use his existing
plant at optimum capacity. What is certain is that the monopolist will not stay in business if he makes losses in the long-run. He will most probably continue to earn supernormal profits even in long-run, given that entry is barred. However, the size of his plant and the degree of utilization of any given plant size depend entirely on the 'market demand'.

There is no unique supply curve for the monopolist derived from MC, the same quantity may be offered at different prices depending on the price elasticity of demand. Similarly, given the MC of the monopolist, various quantities may be supplied at one price, depending on the market demand and the corresponding MR curve.

An upward shift of the market demand will result in a new equilibrium in which the quantity produced will be larger, but the price may increase, remain constant or decrease in the new equilibrium compared to the initial equilibrium.

If the fixed costs of the monopolist increase, his short-run equilibrium will not be affected, since his demand is given and his SMC is not affected by changes in fixed costs. But if the Variable Costs increase, the MC curve of the monopolist will shift upwards to the left with the consequence of a reduction in the output and an increase in the price.

The Monopolist is the only seller in the market of his product. As the only seller, he possesses a monopolistic dominance or monopoly power in the market. But the degree of monopoly power is not the same in the case of all monopolies. The monopoly power could be measured by the extent to which price is greater than MC for each firm. Generally speaking, the less elastic is the demand for a monopolist's product, the more would be his degree of monopoly power, and vice-versa. This idea is supported by Prof. A. P. Lerner (1903-82) for measuring the degree of monopoly power. According to Lerner's Index (LI) the larger the positive value of $\mathrm{P}-\mathrm{MC}$ as a proportion of P , the larger would be the degree of monopoly Power. In other words, the larger the value of Lerner's Index (between 0 and 1) the greater the monopoly power.

The degree of monopoly power determined by the three sources such as Elasticity of market demand, Number of firms in market and the interaction among firms

The monopoly power can also be measured by Concentration Ratio (CR) and Herfindahl Index (HI). The size of largest firm's share or the size of smallest firm's share in total industry sales is known as the Concentration Ratio. The value of Concentration Ratio (CR)
ranges from 0 to 1 ( 0 being lowest and 1 being highest). The Herfindahl Index (HI) corrects some of the major problems Concentration Ratio (CR) method for measuring monopoly power. The HI measures the market concentration in a way that gives a great deal of weight to the share of the largest one or two firms in the market. It does so by squaring the percentage market share of each firm in the market. A larger value of HI indicates a greater monopoly power. The value of $\mathrm{HI}=1$ (maximum value of HI ) found in the case of pure monopoly.

There are two major forms of integration, i.e. Horizontal Integration and Vertical Integration. Horizontal Integration is a kind of business expansion strategy, wherein the company acquires same business line or at the same level of value chain so as to eliminate competition to a greater extent. Conversely, Vertical Integration is used to rule over the entire industry by covering the supply chain. It implies the integration of various entities engaged in different stages of the distribution chain.

There exist certain similarities and differences between perfect completion and Monopoly. However, amongst many differences, one of the important differences is that in Monopoly equilibrium price is higher and output is lower than that of under perfect competition

### 4.3.11 Self Assessment Questions

1. Define Monopoly. Discuss the conditions of short-run equilibrium under monopoly.
2. Discuss the Long-run equilibrium mechanism under monopoly.
3. Do you think there is absence of supply curve in monopoly? Justify.
4. Discuss the effect of Shift in demand on the initial equilibrium of monopoly.
5. Define Monopoly Power. Discuss different methods of its measurement.
6. Distinguish Between horizontal and vertical integration of firms.
7. Distinguish between perfect competition and Monopoly.
8. Write short notes on:
A. Monopoly
B. Effect of change in Cost on initial monopoly equilibrium
C. Lerner's Index
D. Concentration Ratio (CR)
E. Herfindahl Index
F. Horizontal Integration and Vertical Integration of firms

### 4.4 CHAPTER

## MONOPOLISTIC COMPETITION

## Objectives

## After completing this chapter, you will be able to:

- Understand the features of Monopolistic Competition
- Understand the Short-run equilibrium of the firm under Monopolistic Competition
- Understand the Group or Long-run equilibrium and economic efficiency under Monopolistic Competition


## Structure:

### 4.4.1 Imperfect Competition

4.4.2 Monopolistic competition
4.4.3 Equilibrium of a firm (Short-run)
4.4.4 Equilibrium of a Group (long-run) and economic efficiency
4.4.5 Summary
4.4.6 Self Assessment Questions

### 4.4.1 Imperfect Competition

Imperfect competition refers to those market structures that fall between perfect competition and pure monopoly. Imperfect competition includes industries in which firms have competitors but do not face so much competition. Broadly there are two types of Imperfectly Competitive Markets such as Oligopoly (Only a few sellers, each offering a similar or identical product to the others) and Monopolistic Competition (Many firms selling products that are similar but not identical. This chapter deals with the Monopolistic Competition

### 4.4.2 Monopolistic Competition

The Monopolistic competition is regarded as a happy blending of perfect competition and monopoly. In other words, monopolistic competition includes certain feature of perfect competition and certain feature monopoly. The concept of monopolistic completion has been introduced in the literature by Prof. Chamberlin in his famous book "The Theory of Monopolistic Competition". The basic assumptions of monopolistic competition have resemblance with those of perfect completion with the exception of product homogeneity. Product differentiation is the important aspect of monopolistic competition.

## Characteristics

The monopolistic competition is a form of market that characterizes a number of firms/groups that are familiar to consumers in their day-to-day lives. Monopolistic competition characterizes an industry (i.e. Group) in which many firms offer products or services that are differentiated but close substitutes. Barriers to entry and exit in the industry are low, and the decisions of any one firm do not directly affect those of its competitors. All firms have the same, relatively low degree of market power; they are all price makers. In the long run, demand is highly elastic, meaning that it is sensitive to price changes. In the short run, economic profit is positive, but it approaches zero in the long run. Firms in monopolistic competition tend to advertise (a component of selling cost) heavily. Monopolistic competition has a downward sloping demand curve. Thus, just as for a pure monopoly, its marginal revenue will always be less than the market price because it can only increase demand by lowering prices, but by doing so, it must lower the prices of all units of its product. Hence, monopolistically competitive firms maximize profits or minimize losses by producing that quantity where marginal revenue equals marginal cost, both over the short run and the long run.

## Assumptions

The conditions or assumptions which prevail in a monopolistically competitive market can be summarized as follows:
i) There are large number of sellers and buyers in the group
ii) The products of the sellers are differentiated, yet they are close substitute of one another
iii) Flexibility in the entry and exit of firms in the group
iv) The goal of the firm is profit maximization, both in the short-run and long-run
v) The prices of factors and technology are given
vi) The firm is assumed to behave as if it knew its demand and cost curves with certainty
vii) The firms in the market do not consider the reactions of their rivals when choosing their product prices or annual sales targets
viii) Neither the opportunity nor the incentive exists for the firms in the market to cooperate in ways that decrease competition

Each firm may be thought of as being a monopolist producing a good which is not produced by others. But this monopolist faces competition from others producing a good which is a close substitute of his product. The monopolistic competition can therefore be regarded as a situation where different monopolists are competing with one another. Since each firm is selling a differentiated product, each firm informs the consumers about the distinctive features or the special characteristics of his own product. As a result, selling cost or advertising expenditure is necessary in monopolistic competition.

The monopolistic competition has a fundamental feature of product differentiation. Due to the existence of product differentiation, economic rivalry typically takes place in the forms of non-price competition such as product quality, services associated to a product, location and advertising \& packaging etc.

The equilibrium (price and output decision) conditions of a firm (short-run) and of the group (long-run) under monopolistic competition can be discussed as follows:

### 4.4.3 Equilibrium of a monopolistically competitive firm in Short-run

The equilibrium of a firm under monopolistic competition in short run has a resemblance with that of a monopolist. In the short run, a monopolistically competitive firm maximizes profit or minimizes losses by producing that quantity that corresponds to when marginal revenue equals marginal cost. If average total cost is below the market price, then the firm will earn an economic profit and vice-versa as follows.


Fig. 4.4.3 Monopolistic Competition- Short-run Economic Profit

- $\mathrm{D}=$ Market Demand (AR)
- $\mathrm{ATC}=$ Average Total Cost (AC)
- $\quad \mathrm{MR}=$ Marginal Revenue
- MC = Marginal Cost

Figure 4.4.3 shows that the market price charged by the monopolistic competitive firm is equal to the point on the demand curve where MR $=$ MC. Thus, Short-Run Profit $=$ (Price - ATC) x Quantity. If the ATC is above the market price, then the firm will incur losses (shown in fig.4.4.3.1) which can be estimated as Short-Run Loss $=($ ATC - Price $)$ x Quantity. It will still minimize losses by producing that quantity where marginal revenue equals marginal cost, but eventually the firm will either have to reverse the losses, or it will have to exit the industry.


Fig. 4.4.3.1 Monopolistic Competition- Short-run Loss

### 4.4.4 Group Equilibrium (Long-run) under monopolistic competition \& efficiency

In the case of group equilibrium, the $\mathrm{MC}=\mathrm{MR}$ is not sufficient condition for profit maximization though it is a necessary condition for equilibrium. The group or industry equilibrium in long run is possible when each firm is earning only normal profits, that is, the point where $\mathrm{AR}=\mathrm{AC}$ for each firm. This is so because, if the existing firms earn more than normal profits, new firms will enter into the industry. This will reduce the volume of profits of the existing firms. Entry will continue until all firms earn only normal profits. The situation of group equilibrium can be analyzed with the help of the figure 4.4.4 given below.

Figure 4.4.4 shows that the firm is in equilibrium where $A R(D)=A T C$ and $M R=M C$. It means the equilibrium of firms is attained prior to the minimum point of ATC even though on the falling portion of ATC. This property of equilibrium under monopolistic competition is known as the excess capacity as depicted figure 4.4.4. This means that under monopolistic competition excess capacity remains in each firm in the sense that more output can be produced at a lower cost. Thus excess capacity remains under monopolistic competition which can be utilized if some firms eliminated from the group or industry.


Fig. 4.4.4 Group equilibrium with Excess capacity \& inefficiency

It is observed from the figure 4.4.4 that where MC rises above MR, the firm would incur greater costs than it would receive in additional revenue, which is why the firm maximizes its profit by producing only that quantity where $\mathrm{MR}=\mathrm{MC}$, and charging the price at point 1, at point 2 Market price $=$ Marginal cost= Allocative Efficiency, at point 3 Productive Efficiency= Minimum ATC.

Excess Capacity (point 1 to point 3) = Quantity Produced at Minimum ATC - Quantity that yields the greatest profit $(\mathrm{MR}=\mathrm{MC})$. Because monopolistically competitive firms do not operate at their minimum average total cost, they, therefore, operate with excess capacity.

### 4.4.5 Summary

The Monopolistic competition is regarded as a happy blending of perfect competition and monopoly. In other words, monopolistic competition includes certain feature of perfect competition and certain feature monopoly.

The monopolistic competition is characterized by a large number sellers and buyers; product differentiation (close substitutes), barriers to entry and exit are low, importance of group equilibrium, importance of selling cost.

In the short run, a monopolistically competitive firm maximizes profit or minimizes losses by producing that quantity that corresponds to when marginal revenue equals marginal cost. If average total cost is below the market price, then the firm will earn an economic profit and vice-versa as follows.

In the case of group equilibrium, the $\mathrm{MC}=\mathrm{MR}$ is not sufficient condition for profit maximization though it is a necessary condition for equilibrium. The group or industry equilibrium in long run is possible when each firm is earning only normal profits, that is, the point where $A R=A C$ for each firm.

The equilibrium of firms is attained prior to the minimum point of ATC even though on the falling portion of ATC. This property of equilibrium under monopolistic competition is known as the excess capacity. In monopolistic competition excess capacity remains in each firm in the sense that more output can be produced at a lower cost and also it can be utilized if some firms eliminated from the group or industry. The firms in the group under monopolistic competition also suffer from productive and allocative inefficiency. Because monopolistically competitive firms do not operate at their minimum average total cost, they, therefore, operate with excess capacity.

### 4.4.6 Self Assessment Questions

1. Discuss the characteristics of Monopolistic Competition.
2. Discuss the Short run Equilibrium of a firm under Monopolistic Competition.
3. Discuss the Group or long run equilibrium under monopolistic competition with excess capacity and economic efficiency.

### 4.5 CHAPTER

## OLIGOPOLY

## Objectives

## After completing this chapter, you will be able to:

- Understand the features of Oligopoly
- Analyze the Interdependency of firms in price and output determination under oligopoly
- Understand the basic concept of Game theory


## Structure:

4.5.1 Oligopoly:
4.5.2 Oligopoly and Interdependence (Kinked Demand Curve)
4.5.3 Basic concept of Game Theory
4.5.4 Summary
4.5.5 Self Assessment Questions

### 4.5.1 Oligopoly:

Oligopoly is an important form of imperfect competition. Oligopoly is said to prevail when there are few firms or sellers in the market producing or selling a product. In other words when there are two or more than two, but not many, producers or sellers of a product, oligopoly is said to exist. Oligopoly is also referred to as "competition among the few". The simplest case of oligopoly is duopoly which prevails when there are only two producers or sellers of a product.

Although there is no borderline between few and many but when the number of seller of a product are two to ten (as observed from some of the literature in this regard), oligopoly is said to exist. When products of a few sellers are homogeneous, we talk of oligopoly without product differentiation or Pure Oligopoly. On the other hand, When products of a few sellers or firms instead of being homogeneous, are differentiated but close substitute but each other, oligopoly with product differentiation or differentiated (or imperfect) oligopoly is said to prevail. Further, the price and output determination under oligopoly can be categories into Collusive Oligopoly and Non Collusive Oligopoly.

## Characteristics of Oligopoly

## The main features or characteristics of oligopoly are:

- Few sellers and large number of buyers
- Interdependence of firms (firms will be affected by how other firms set price and output) in decision making.
- Indeterminateness of equilibrium price and output ( unlike perfect competition or monopoly or monopolistic competition there is no determined conditions equilibrium in oligopoly)
- Significant importance of advertising and selling cost (due to differentiated oligopoly )
- Dependency on group behavior for decision making.
- Depends on Strategic Behaviour , a unique feature of an oligopolist, refers to a situation when an oligopolist takes its price output decision considering the possible reaction of its rival firms in this regard.
- Indeterminateness of demand curve facing an oligopolist (unlike perfect competition or monopoly or monopolistic competition there is no determined shape or slope of demand curve in oligopoly)


### 4.5.2 Oligopoly and Interdependence

The distinctive feature of an oligopoly is interdependence. Oligopolies are typically composed of a few large firms. Each firm is so large that its actions affect market conditions. Therefore, the competing firms will be aware of a firm's market actions and will respond appropriately.

The interdependency in Oligopoly has been explained by various models of non-collusive oligopoly such as Stackelberg's duopoly model (in this model, the firms move sequentially), Cournot's duopoly model (in this model, the firms simultaneously choose quantities), Bertrand's Oligopoly model (in this model, the firms simultaneously choose prices) and Kinked Demand Curve model (in this model, interdependency of firms revealed price rigidity). However, the Kinked Demand Curve model (developed by Paul Sweezy) is one of the better-known models explaining interdependency in oligopoly. Let us discuss the kinked demand curve model.

## Kinked Demand Curve Model

Many explanations have been given for the price rigidity under oligopoly and most popular explanation is the so-called kinked demand curve hypothesis.

The kinked demand curve dD with a kink at point E . Thus, the prevailing price level determined at the point of kink is OP and the output sold by the firm at this price is OX. The upper segment of the demand curve dD is relatively elastic and lower segment ED is relatively inelastic. This difference in elasticities is due to the particular competitive reaction pattern assumed by kinked demand curve hypothesis.

The competitive reaction pattern assumed by the kinked demand curve theory of oligopoly is as follows:-

Ecah oligopolist believes that if he lowers the price below the prevailing level, his competitors will follow him and will accordingly lower their prices, whereas if he raises the price above the prevailing level, his competitors will not follow the increase in price.

In otherwords, each oligopolist firm believes that though its rival firms will not match his increase in price, above the prevailing level, they will indeed match its price cut. These two different types of reaction of the competitors to the increase in price on the one hand and to the reduction in price on the other hand that makes the portion of the demand curve above the prevailing price level relatively elastic and the portion of the demand curve below it relatively inelastic.

If the oligopolist reduces its price level below the prevailing price level OP , due to the reaction of the competitors to it, he will gain in sales only very little. Very small increase in sales of an oligopolist following his reduction in price below the prevailing level means that the demand for him is inelastic below the prevailing price. Thus, the segment ED of the demand curve in the figure which lies below the prevailing price OP is inelastic showing that very little increase in sales can be obtained by a reduction in price by an oligopolist.

Similarly, if an oligopolist raises his price above the prevailing level, there will be a substantial reduction in his sales. So, large reduction in sales following an increase in price above the existing one is highly elastic. Thus, in the figure the segment dE of the demand curve which lies above the prevailing price level Op is elastic showing a large fall in sales if a producer raises his price.

## Why Price Rigidity:-

Since the oligopolist will not gain any large share of the market by reducing his price below the prevailing level, and there will be a substantial reduction in his sales if he increases his price above the prevailing level, he will be extremely reluctant to change the prevailing price. In other words, each duopolist will adhere to the prevailing price seeing no gain in changing it. Thus rigid prices are explained according to the kinked demand curve theory.

## Profit Maximizing Condition:-

For finding the profit maximizing price-output combination, marginal revenue curve MR corresponding to the kinked demand curve dD has been drawn. The marginal revenue curve associated with a kinked demand curve is discontinuous or in other words, it has a broken vertical portion. The length of the discontinuity depends upon the relative elasticities of two segments dE and ED of the demand at point E . Now if the marginal cost curve of the oligopolist is such that it passes anywhere through the discontinuous portion $A B$ of the marginal revenue curve, as shown in the figure the oligopolist will be maximizing his profits at the prevailing price level OP. Since the oligopolist is in equilibrium or in other words maximizing his profit at the prevailing price level, it will have no incentive to change the price. Further, even if there are changes in costs, the price will remain stable so long as the marginal cost curves passes through the gap AB in the marginal revenue curve as shown in the figure.

## Criticism:-

- This model does not explain the price and output decision of the firms.
- It does not define the level at which price will be set in order to maximize profits.
- The kink is the consequence (manifestation) of the uncertainty of the oligopolists and of their expectations that competitors will match price cuts, but not price increases. However, it does not explain the level of the price at which the kink will occur.

Hence, it is not a theory of pricing rather a tool for explaining why the price, once determined in one way or another, will tend to remain fixed.


Fig. 4.5.2 Kinked Demand Curve

### 4.5.3 Basic Concept of Game theory

In an oligopoly, firms are interdependent; they are affected not only by their own decisions regarding how much to produce, but by the decisions of other firms in the market as well. Game theory offers a useful framework for thinking about how firms may act in the context of this interdependence. So, Oligopoly theory often makes use of game theory to model the behavior of oligopolies

In an oligopoly, firms are affected not only by their own production decisions, but by the production decisions of other firms in the market as well. The prisoner's dilemma is a type of game that illustrates why cooperation is difficult to maintain for oligopolists even when it is mutually beneficial.

## Important Concepts associated with Game Theory

| Cooperative Outcome | An equilibrium in a game where players agree to <br> cooperative |
| :--- | :--- |
| Dominant Strategy | A dominant strategy is one where a single strategy is best <br> for a player regardless of what strategy other players in <br> the game decide to use |
| Nash equilibrium | Any situation where all participants in a game are |


|  | pursuing their best possible strategy given the strategies of <br> all of the other participants |
| :--- | :--- |
| Tactic Collusion | Where firms undertake actions that are likely to minimize <br> competitive response, e.g. avoiding price-cutting or not <br> attacking each other's market |
| Whistle Blowing | When one or more agents in a collusive agreement report <br> it to the authorities. |
| Zero-Sum Game | An economic transaction in which whatever is gained by <br> one party must be lost by the other |

### 4.5.4 Summary

Oligopoly is an important form of imperfect competition. Oligopoly is said to prevail when there are few firms or sellers in the market producing or selling a product. Firms in an oligopoly face a kinked demand curve. If they raise price above $P$ the demand curve is relatively elastic as people will switch to buying substitute products from competitors. If they drop price below P they face an inelastic demand curve as other firms will also cut prices so few gains in quantity demanded occur. Game theory looks at the players in a game or firms in a market In making decisions each player has a number of choices. Each player is influenced by their own actions and the actions of other players. Game theory can be used to illustrate the interdependence of firms in an oligopoly.

### 4.5.5 Self Assessment Questions

1. Define Oligopoly. Discuss its features.
2. What is Kinked Demand Curve?
3. Explain the reasons for Price Rigidity in Oligopoly.
4. Explain the Profit maximizing condition with the help of kinked demand curve.
5. Discuss the basic concepts of Game theory.

## UNIT-5

## PROFIT ANALYSIS

### 5.1 CHAPTER

## Profit and Theories of Profit

## Objectives

After going through this unit, you should be able to:

- Understand the concept and some important theories of profit
- Understand the concept of profit planning and break-even Analysis
- Apply the analysis of profit for making managerial decision.


## Structure

5.1.1 Introduction
5.1.2 Theories of profit
5.1.3 Break-even Analysis
5.1.4 Summary
5.1.5 Self-Assessment Questions

### 5.1.1 Profit Concept- Introduction

The concept of Profit is interpreted in different ways by different people, even though it is a commonly used and familiar term. In Economics, Profit may be defined as the residual of the difference between total income and total cost. In other words profit is the net income of a business. Profits are, therefore, uncertain and vary from person to person and from firm to firm. When costs are equal to income, profit becomes zero. If the costs are higher, profits may be converted into loss. Profit is also defined as Entrepreneur's Reward. It means profit is the reward of entrepreneurial functions. Hence, Profit is an amount which accrues to the entrepreneur for assuming the risk inseparable from business. In other words, profit is a reward for assuming the final responsibility (though implicit) of the business. In the long
run, profit must be positive, otherwise the entrepreneur will give up his independent activity and take to service for wages.

Profit can be gross and net. Gross profits are the difference between total sale proceeds and total expenses over a year and besides net profit it includes (a) Rent of the employer's land or premises, (b) Interest on entrepreneur's capital, (c) Wages of management and (d) Maintenance charges. Net Profits can be obtained by deducting the above stated items a to d from gross profits. The entrepreneur is entitled to different kinds of payments which form a part of his net profits are Reward for risk-taking, Reward due to a monopolistic position, Reward for better bargaining and Windfalls.

### 5.1.2 Theories of Profit:

Several theories have been put forward by way of explanation of profit. The followings are some of the important theories of profit.

## 1. Rent Theory of Profit

2. Wage Theory of Profit
3. Risk Theory of Profit
4. The Dynamic Theory of Profit
5. Schumpeter's Innovation Theory
6. Uncertainty Bearing Theory of Profit
7. Marginal Productivity Theory of Profit.

## 1.Rent Theory of Profit:

The Rent Theory of Profit was propounded by an American economist F.A. Walker. He was known for making distinction between a capitalist and an entrepreneur in economic theory. According to him an entrepreneur need not be a capitalist as the entrepreneur is a person who may undertake a business without using any of his own capital. This indicates that the talent or innovative skill of the entrepreneur may be rewarded in business. His theory of profits states that profit is the rent of superior entrepreneur over marginal of less efficient entrepreneur. Thus, he defines profit as the rent of entrepreneurial ability, which is highlighted as follows.

Rent of Ability:

According to Walker Profit can be defined as rent of ability. Just as there are different grades of land, there are different grades of entrepreneurs. The least efficient or marginal entrepreneur sells his produce at cost price and gets no profit. But the supper marginal entrepreneurs or entrepreneurs of superior ability earn profit. Just as rent arises because of the differential advantage enjoyed by superior land over the marginal land, similarly profit also is the reward for differential ability of the entrepreneur over the marginal entrepreneur or the no-profit entrepreneur.

Profit is thus like rent and like rent it does not enter into price. The marginal entrepreneur sells his produce at cost price and gets no profit. He secures only the wages of management not profit. Thus profit does not enter into cost of production. Like rent, profit also does not enter into price. Profit is thus a surplus.

## Criticism:

(a). There cannot be perfect similarity between rent and profit. Rent is generally positive and in rare cases it may be zero. But rent can never be negative whereas when entrepreneur suffers losses profit can be negative.
(b). The theory explains profit as the differential surplus rather than a reward for an entrepreneur.
(c). Profit is not always the reward for business ability. Profit can be due to monopoly or it can arise due to favourable chance to the entrepreneur.
(d). This theory maintains that there is no profit entrepreneur just as no rent land. But in practical life there is no such entrepreneur because whether the entrepreneur has ability or not he gets profit as his reward.
(e). This theory assumes that profit does not enter into price. But this is unrealistic because profit as a part of the cost of production does enter into price.
(f). Walker failed to explain the true nature of profit. According to Walker, profit arose on account of the ability of the entrepreneur to undertake risk. Critics point out that profit is not the reward for undertaking risk but it is the reward for the avoidance of risk.

It is obvious that there is differential element in profit and hence superior entrepreneurs earn higher profit. There can be no-rent land but there cannot any no-profit employer. If he does not get profit in the long run, he will join the ranks of salaried employees. Nevertheless profit does contain element of rent because of differences in the ability of the entrepreneurs. But it is not entirely of the nature of rent.

## 2. Wage Theory of Profit:

This theory was propounded by Taussig, the American economist. According to this theory, profit is a type of wage which is given to the entrepreneur for the services rendered by him. In the words, "profit is the wage of the entrepreneur which accrues to him on account of his ability".

Just as a labourer receives wages for his services, the entrepreneur works hard and gets profit for the role played by him in the production. The only difference is that while labourer renders physical services, entrepreneur puts in mental work. Thus an entrepreneur is not different from a doctor, lawyer, teacher, etc., who do mental work. Profit is thus a form of wage.

## Criticism:

(a). This theory does not make a distinction between wage and profit. Wages are fixed and certain, but profits are uncertain income.
(b). The entrepreneurs undergo risk in production; but the labourer undertakes no such risk. Further, the entrepreneur bears the entire responsibility to organize the business, but labourer need not do so.
(c). Profits tend to vary with price but wages do not vary so.
(d). The labourer get his wages if he has put in the required amount of labour, but the entrepreneur may not get profit even if he works hard.
(e). Profit may include chance gain while wages do not include such an element.

## 3. Risk Theory of Profit:

This theory is associated with American economist F. B. Hawley. According to him profit is the reward for risk-taking in business. Risk-taking is supposed to be the most important
function of an entrepreneur. Every production that is undertaken in anticipation of demand involves risk. According to Drucker there are four kinds of risk. They are replacement, obsolescence, risk proper and uncertainty. The first two are calculated and therefore they are insured. But the other two are unknown and unforeseen risks. It is for bearing such risk profit is paid to entrepreneur. No entrepreneur will be willing to undertake risks if he gets only the normal return.

Therefore the reward for risk-taking must be higher than the actual value of the risk. If the entrepreneur does not receive the reward, he will not be prepared to undertake the risk. Thus higher the risk greater is the possibility of profit.

According to Hawley the entrepreneur can avoid certain risks for a fixed payment to the insurance company. But he cannot get rid of all risks by means of insurance. If he does so he is not an entrepreneur and would earn only wages of management and not profit.

## Criticism:

(a). Risk-taking is not the only entrepreneurial function which leads to emergence of profits. Profits are also due to the organizational and coordinating ability of the entrepreneur. It is also reward for innovation.
(b). According to Carver profit is paid to an entrepreneur not for beaming the risk but for minimizing and avoiding risk.
(c). This theory assumes that profit is proportional to risk undertaken by entrepreneurs. But this is not true in practical life because even entrepreneurs who do not take any risk are paid profit.
(d). Knight says that it is not every risk that gives profit. It is unforeseen and non-insured risks that account for profit. An insurable risk in reality is no risk and profit cannot arise due to insurable risk.

## 4. The Dynamic Theory of Profit:

Prof. J.B. Clark propounded the dynamic theory of profit. He was of the opinion that there can be no profit in the static world. To him profit is the difference between the price and the cost of production of the commodity. Profit is the result of progressive change in an organized society. In other words, according to him profit arises only in dynamic state.

In a static state, the five generic changes such as the size of the population, technical knowledge, the amount of capital, method of production of the firms and the size of the industry and the wants of the people do not take place; everything is stagnant and there is no change at all. In a world like this, everything is known and can be accurately foreseen. There is no risk, and hence no .profit. Costs and selling price are always equal (because of the presence of perfect competition), and there can be no profit beyond wages for the routine work of supervision.

It is well known that the society has always been dynamic. Several changes are taking place in a dynamic society. According to Clark five major changes are constantly taking place in a society. They are: Changes in the size of the population, Changes in the supply of capital, Changes in production techniques, Changes in the forms of industrial organisation, and Changes in human wants.

These dynamic changes affect the demand and supply of commodities which leads to emergence of profit. Sometimes individual firms may introduce dynamic changes. The typical dynamic change is an invention. This enables the entrepreneur to produce more and reduce costs, leading to emergence of profit.

## Criticism:

(a). Prof. Knight, opinions that it is the ignorance of the future or uncertainty, and not necessarily change, which causes the profit. In other words, this theory states that profit arises because of dynamic changes, but Prof. Knight says that it is only unforeseen changes that give rise to profit.
(b). It may be wrong to say that there is no profit in static state because every entrepreneur is paid profit irrespective of the state of an economy.
(c). This theory does not fully appreciate the nature of the entrepreneurial function. If there are no profits in a static state, it means there is no entrepreneur. But without an entrepreneur it is not possible to imagine how different factors of production would be employed.
(d). This theory assumes the existence of perfect competition and static state. But they are far from reality.
(e). According to Taussig, "dynamic theory has created unnecessary and artificial distinction between "profits" and wage of management".

## 5. Schumpeter's Innovation Theory:

This theory was propounded by American economist Joseph Schumpeter. This theory is more or less similar to that of Clark's dynamic theory of profit. Instead of five changes mentioned by Clark, Schumpeter explains the change caused by innovations in the production process. According to this theory profit is the reward for innovations. He uses the term innovation in a sense wider than that of the changes mentioned by Clark. According to Schumpeter, the principal function of the entrepreneur is to make innovations and profits are a reward for successful innovations.

Innovation refers to all those changes, in the production process with an objective of reducing the cost of commodity so as to create gap between the existing price of the commodity and its new cost. Innovation may take any shape like introduction of a new technique or a new plant, a change in the internal structure or organizational set up of the firm or change in the quality of raw material, a new form of energy, better method of salesmanship to stimulate the demand for the product etc.

Schumpeter makes a distinction between invention and innovation. Innovation is brought about mainly for reducing the cost of production and it is cost reducing agent. Profit is the reward for this strategic role; Innovations are not possible by all entrepreneurs. Only exceptional entrepreneurs can innovate. They are capable of tapping new resources, technical knowledge and reduce the cost of production. Thus the main motive for introducing innovation is the desire to earn profit. Profit is therefore the cause of innovation.

Profits are of temporary nature. The pioneer who innovates earns abnormal profit for a short period. Soon other entrepreneurs, "swarm in clusters", compete for profit in the same manner. The pioneer will make another innovation. In a dynamic world innovation in one field may induce other innovations in related fields. Profits are thus causes and effects of innovation. The interest of profit leads entrepreneur to innovate and innovation leads to profit. Thus profit has a tendency to appear, disappear and reappear.

Profits are caused by innovation and disappear by imitation. Profit by innovation is thus, never permanent as opined by Schumpeter. Therefore it is different from other incomes, such
as rent, wages and interest. These are regular and permanent incomes arising under all circumstances. Profit on the other hand is a temporary surplus resulting from innovation.

Prof. Schumpeter also explained his views on the functions of the entrepreneur. The entrepreneur organizes the business and combines the various factors of production. But this is not his real function and this will not yield him profit. The real function of the entrepreneur is to introduce innovations in business. It is innovations which yield him profit.

## Criticisms:

(a). This theory concentrates only on innovation, which is only one of the many functions of the entrepreneur and not the only factor.
(b). This theory does not consider profit as the reward for risk-taking. According to Schumpeter it is the capitalist not the entrepreneur who undertakes risk.
(c). This theory has ignored the importance of uncertainty bearing which is one of the factors that determines profit.
(d). Monopoly profits are permanent in nature while Schumpeter says that innovate profits occur temporarily.
(e). Schumpeter's innovation theory can be criticised on the same ground as Clark's dynamic theory.
(f). Schumpeter also like Clark ignores uncertainty as a source of profit.

## 6. Uncertainty Bearing Theory of Profit:

This theory was propounded by an American economist Prof. Frank H. Knight. According to Prof. Knight, it is uncertainty-bearing (unforeseeable risk) rather than risk-taking which is the special function of the entrepreneur and leads to profit. In other words, according to Knight, profit is the reward for bearing non-insurable risks and uncertainties. According to Knight the foreseen risks are not genuine economic risks eligible for any remuneration of profit. In other words insurable risk does not give rise to profit. Thus, to him profit is due to noninsurable risk or unforeseeable risk.

Some of the non- insurable risks which arise in modern business are: Competitive risk, Technical risk, Risk of government intervention, Cyclical risk and Risk of demand etc.. This is generated by a shift or change of demand in the market. Prof. Knight calls these risks as 'uncertainties' and 'it is uncertainties in this sense which explains profit in the proper use of the term'. These risks cannot be foreseen and measured, they become non- insurable and the uncertainties have to be borne by the entrepreneur. According to this theory there is a direct relationship between profit and uncertainty bearing. The Greater the uncertainty bearing, the higher will be the level of profit. Uncertainty beaming has become so important in business enterprise in modern days that it has come to be considered as a separate factor of production. Like other factors it has a supply price and entrepreneurs undertake uncertainty bearing in the expectation of earning certain level of profit. Profit is thus the reward for assuming uncertainty.

In the modern days production has to take place In advance of consumption. The producers have to face their rival producers and the future is uncertain and unknown. These are uncertainties. Some entrepreneurs are able to see it more clearly than others and therefore able to earn profit.

## Criticism:

(a). This theory reveals that profit is the reward for uncertainty bearing, but sometimes an entrepreneur earns no profit in spite of uncertainty bearing.
(b). Uncertainty bearing is one of the determinants of profit but it is not the only determinant. Profit is also a reward for many other activities performed by entrepreneur like initiating, coordinating and bargaining, etc.
(c). It is difficult to measure uncertainty in quantitative terms for the purpose of this theory.
(d). In modern business corporations ownership is separate from control. Knight does not separate ownership and control and this theory becomes unrealistic.
(e). Uncertainty bearing cannot be looked upon as a separate factor of production like land, labour or capital. It is a psychological concept which forms part of the real cost of production.
(f). Monopoly firms earn much larger profits than competitive firms and they are not due to the presence of uncertainty. This theory throws no light on monopoly profit.

Knight's theory of profit is more elaborate than other theories, because it combines the conception of risk, of economic change and of the role of business ability.

## 7. Marginal Productivity Theory of Profit:

Entrepreneur being one of the factor of production, the general theory of distribution is also applied it and profit of the entrepreneur is said to be determined on the basis of its marginal productivity.. According to Prof. Chapman, profits are equal to the marginal worth of the entrepreneur and are determined by the marginal productivity of the entrepreneur. When the marginal productivity is high, profits will be high.

The marginal revenue productivity of any factor represents the demand curve of a factor and in the similar manner the marginal revenue productivity curve of entrepreneur is the demand curve of an entrepreneur. As more and more firms enter into the industry, the marginal revenue productivity (MRP) of entrepreneurship decreases. Thus, the slope of the MRP curve will be negative. But the supply curve of entrepreneur will be perfectly elastic under perfect competition.

## Criticism:

(a). It is very difficult to calculate the marginal productivity of entrepreneurship. Hence, this theory may not give a satisfactory basis to the theory of profit.
(b). It is one-sided theory which takes into account only the demand for entrepreneurs and neglects supply of entrepreneurs.
(c). It is a static theory according to which all entrepreneurs earn only normal profits in the long- run. In the real world entrepreneurs earn more than normal profit due to its dynamic nature

## Conclusion on Theories of Profits:

The various theories of profit have been discussed as above and it is observed that in the real world, there are several causes which give rise to profit, but the principal cause is uncertainty. It is uncertainty which is the basic cause of profit. This uncertainty is due to the dynamic nature of the world. In this real world of ours, some or the other change is always taking place. No entrepreneur can foresee all these changes nor are the circumstances under his control. .Thus, there is no single theory which will explain profit but a synthesis of all the
theories mentioned above required be made to define profit depending various factors and circumstances affecting the business and entrepreneurial ability on both demand and supply side.

### 5.1.3 Break Even Analysis

Break even analysis is a specific method of presenting and studying the relationship between Cost, Volume and Profit. It is important tool of the management to analyze the impact of change in volume, price, costs and mix on profit. The Break-even point (BEP)can be defined as a point at which a firm neither earn any profit nor suffers any loss (as TC=TR at BEP).Production and Sale below the BEP incurs loss and above the BEP creates profit. In other words at break even such volume of goods or Services are sold by the firm which only able to recover at least total cost i.e. the fixed and variable operating costs.


## Assumptions

The break even analysis however depends upon certain assumptions for its practical applicability which are narrated below.

1. Costs incurred by the firm must be classified into fixed and variable only.

Practically there is another type of cost called semi-variable (fixed) cost which carries the features of variable and fixed cost. By using appropriate method, the semi-variable cost needs to be separated into variable and fixed costs.
2. The total revenue function is linear within a certain range.

The unit selling price of the product/service is assumed to remain constant within a certain range. This implies that the product or service is operating within a purely competitive market. In some economic models where demand responds to price changes, the revenue function is curvilinear. In these situations the linear function is accurate within a limited range of activity.
3. Cost behavior must be Predictable.

It is the Fact that variable cost varies according to the volume of production and fixed cost remain constant for any level of activity. Hence the behavior of cost is predictable. But for all practical purposes the concept do not hold good. As such fixed cost remains constant for certain level of installed capacity. When there is a change in installed capacity or managerial decision the fixed cost happens to be a drastic change. Similarly, the variable cost also changes no in proportion to volume of production due to learning effect.
4. The unit selling price is to remain constant.

It is assumed that selling price per unit should remain constant. As stated above the total revenue of the firm is a linear function of output. This assumption however holds good when the product has got good market demand. But for other firms it may not be true. The price reduction strategy may be adopted to enhance the volume of production so also profit due to higher level of sales.
5. Stable Product Mix.

Assuming that firm engaged in production of multiple product must maintain the same product mix. Without this assumption it is not possible to define the average variable profit ratio when different products have different profit ratio.
6. No Inventory.

It is assumed that the volume of production needs to be sold during the same year of production leaving no closing stock. As such the production cost consists of variable and fixed operating cost. The fixed operating cost cannot be carried forward to the next year along with the unsold stock. Fixed cost must be recovered during the year it has incurred.

Elements of Break Even Analysis:

As stated earlier, break-even is a situation of no profit no loss. It means that it is a stage where total cost is equal to total sales value. In order to understand algebraic or mathematical
relationship between Cost, Volume of production and Profit, it is necessary to know the following concepts.
(i) Contribution (C)
(ii) Profit Volume Ratio (P/V)
(iii) Break Even Point (BEP)
(iv) Margin of Safety (M.S.)
(v) Sales, Variable Cost, Fixed Cost

## Contribution

It is the difference between Sales and Variable Cost, which contributes to recover fixed cost. At Break-Even point total contribution becomes equal to fixed cost. Contribution $>$ fixed Cost leads to profit else loss.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { Contribution= Sales-Variable Cost } \\
& \text { Contribution }=\text { Fixed cost }+ \text { Profit } \\
& \text { Contribution }=\text { Fixed Cost (at BEP) }
\end{aligned}
$$

Management therefore tries to enhance contribution by increasing the sale price or volume of sales or by reducing variable cost. Each and every component of variable costs must be studied well along with their properties so as to exercise control measures to reduce the cost. Purchasing of desired quantities to avail trade discount and application of JIT would reduce material cost, timely trainings to the staff, payment of better salary and staff welfare measures would lead to enhancement of productivity and efficiency. Implementation of Sophisticated and modernized machines also reduces variable cost.

## Profit Volume Ratio

Profit Volume Ratio can also be represented as Contribution margin ratio. Contribution when divided by sales results $\mathrm{P} / \mathrm{V}$ ratio. $\mathrm{P} / \mathrm{V}$ ratio is one of the managerial decision making tool. Profitability of Production and operations of a business establishment can be assessed by applying P/V ratio. Higher is the P/V ratio more will be the profit.

P/V Ratio $=\frac{\text { Contribution }}{\text { Sales }}$

Or, P/V Ratio $=\frac{\text { Fixed Cost }+ \text { Profit }}{\text { Sales }}$

Or, P/V Ratio $=\frac{\text { Sales }- \text { Variable } \text { Cost }}{\text { Sales }}$

## Break-Even Point

A business is said to be Breakeven when its total sales revenues are equal to total operating costs. It is a point of no profit and no loss. A firm which becomes break-even at less number of units is said to be better from other firms. The Break-Even Point and other relevant calculations can be made from the applications of the following ways.

BEP in Units $=\frac{\text { Fixed Cost }}{\text { Sell Price per unit-Variable Costs per unit }}=\frac{\text { Fixed Cost }}{\text { Contribution per unit }}$

BEP in Values $=\frac{\text { Fixed Cost }}{\frac{P}{V} \text { ratio }}$
For a desired level of Profit, the Volume of Sales will be equal to
$\frac{\text { Fixed Cost }+ \text { Desired Profit }}{\text { Contribution per unit }}$

Or, $\frac{\text { Fixed Cost }+ \text { Desired Profit }}{\frac{P}{v} \text { ratio }}$

## Example

Suppose that $\mathrm{FC}=$ Rs. $10,000, \mathrm{P}=$ Rs. $20, \mathrm{AVC}=$ Rs.15, Desired Profit (DP) of the Firm (i.e. required profit target set by the firm)= Rs. 20,000. Estimate the output required ( $\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{r}}$ ) to achieve the desired profit.
$\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{r}}=\frac{\text { Fixed Cost }+ \text { Desired Profit }}{\text { Contribution per unit }}=\frac{F C t+D P}{P-A V C}=\frac{10,000+20,000}{20-15}=6,000$

Assuming Desired Profit $(\mathrm{DP})=0$, the output rate estimated is called BEP for the firm
$\mathrm{Q}=\frac{F C}{P-A V C}=\frac{10,000}{20-15}=2,000$

As shown in the figure given above BEP is achieved where $\mathrm{TC}=\mathrm{TR}$, which can be proved from the data of this example.
$\mathrm{TC}=\mathrm{TFC}+\mathrm{TVC}=\mathrm{FC}+\mathrm{VC}=\mathrm{FC}+\mathrm{AVC}(\mathrm{Q})=10,000+15 \mathrm{Q}=10,000+15(2000)=$ Rs.40,000

Give the Price, $\mathrm{TR}=\mathrm{PQ}=20 \mathrm{Q}=20(2000)=$ Rs. 40,000

So, at $\mathrm{BEP} \mathrm{TC}=\mathrm{TR}=$ Rs. 40,000 for $\mathrm{BEP} \mathrm{Q}=2000$ units based on the example.

## Composite BEP

Practically a business undertaking may have different production capacities, fixed costs etc. It is therefore necessary to assess combined BEP Sales and Profitability. Hence, the combined fixed costs have to be met by combined BEP Sales.

To calculate composite BEP, two different approaches can be followed.
(a) Constant Product mix approach
(b) Variable Product mix approach

According to Constant Product mix approach individual contribution margin of each division need to be multiplied by the capacity ratio, which must be divided by the sales price to find out the combined P/V ratio. To find out the combined BEP, the combined fixed cost must be divided by the combined P/V ratio. The calculated combined BEP can be divided according to the production capacity ratio to determine the divisional BEP expressed in terms of Values.

## Example:

A company has two factories producing X and Y products of same features and selling price is Rs. 300 per unit. Following are the other particulars.

| Particulars | Factory-1 | Factory-2 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |


| Product | X | Y |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Capacity (units) | 10,000 | 15,000 |
| Variable Costs | Rs. 200 | Rs. 240 |
| Fixed Cost | Rs. $3,00,000$ | Rs. $2,10,000$ |

Determine combined BEP of the two factories and individual BEPs under constant product mix.

## Solution:

| Factory | 1 | 2 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Selling Price (Rs.) | 300 | 300 |
| Variable Cost (Rs.) | 200 | 240 |
| Contribution | 100 | 60 |
| Fixed Cost (Rs.) | $3,00,000$ | $2,10,000$ |
| BEP (units) | 3000 | 3500 |
| Capacity Ratio | $2 / 5$ | $3 / 5$ |

Combined P/V Ratio $=\frac{\left(\frac{2}{5} x 100\right)+\left(\frac{3}{5} x 60\right)}{150}=\frac{40+36}{150}=\frac{76}{150}$

Combined $\mathrm{BEP}=\frac{5,10,000}{76 / 150}=\frac{5,10,000 \times 150}{76}=$ Rs. 1006578.9
Product $\mathrm{X}=$ Rs. $1006578.9 \times \frac{2}{5}=$ Rs. 402631.56

Product $Y=$ Rs. $1006578.9 \times \frac{3}{5}=$ Rs. 603947.34

## Variable Product Mix

Under this approach the product which generates a higher contribution per unit will be given priority to cover fixed costs. The remaining fixed cost will be utilized by the other products having lower contribution. As such BEP is the situation where total contributions will be equal to total fixed costs. As such BEP is the situation where total contributions will be equal to total fixed costs.

## Example

Two Departments under a factory produce two different products as per the following particulars.

| Particulars |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Departments | A | B |
| Product | X | Y |
| Production Capacity (units) | 8000 | 8000 |
| Selling Price (Rs.) | 100 | 150 |
| Variable Costs (Rs.) | 40 | 110 |
| Contribution (Rs.) | 60 | 40 |
| Fixed Cost (Rs.) | $3,00,000$ | $3,80,000$ |

Since contribution per unit of X product is higher than product Y , hence fixed cost will be applied towards production of X product.

The total fixed cost is Rs. 6,80,000.
The fixed Cost adjusted towards production of X is as follows.
8000 x Rs. $60=$ Rs. 4,80, 000
Remaining fixed cost is (Rs. 6,80,000 - Rs. 4,80,000) = Rs. 2,00,000
Required production of Y product to cover fixed cost of Rs. 2,00,000 will be 5000 units (i.e. Rs. 2,00,000 / Rs.40).

The value of Combined BEP will be 13000 units or,
$\mathrm{X} \rightarrow 8000 \mathrm{x}$ Rs. $100=$ Rs. 8,00,000
$\mathrm{Y} \rightarrow 5000 \times$ Rs. $150=$ Rs. $7,50,000$
Total BEP Sales $=$ Rs. 15, 50,000

## Margin of Safety (M.S.)

It is the difference between actual sales and BEP sales. Sale beyond BEP is also known as margin of safety The magnitude of M.S. of an organization determines the business risk. A
high margin of safety indicates better business strength. A substantial reduction of sales or volume of production will have little impact on profit. A low M.S. indicates a small reduction of sales or production, which will lead to loss.
M.S. $=$ Actual Sales - BEP sales $O R,$, M.S. $=\frac{\text { Profit }}{\frac{P}{V} \text { ratio }}$

## Operating Leverage and Profit Elasticity- Concept

A firm is said to be highly leveraged if the fixed costs are high relative to variable costs. The use of leverage in general implies higher risks showing more variability in profit over time. The important feature of a highly leveraged firm is that it experiences more variations in profits for a given percentage change in output than does a less leveraged firm. The leverage is greatest for smaller output rates and that it declines as output increases.

Leverage can be analyzed applying the concept of Profit Elasticity (E $\pi$ ). The Profit Elasticity ( $\mathrm{E} \pi$ ) refers to the percentage change in profit due to 1 percentage change in unit sales or rate of output. The greater the total fixed cost will have the higher profit elasticity.
$\mathrm{E} \pi=\frac{\% \Delta \text { Profit }}{\% \Delta \text { unit Sales }}=\frac{\Delta \pi / \pi}{\Delta Q / Q}=\frac{\Delta \pi}{\Delta Q} \cdot \frac{Q}{\pi}$

Where, $\pi=$ Profit $\Delta=$ Change in $\mathrm{Q}=$ unit sales or rate of output
$\operatorname{Profit}(\pi)=\mathrm{TR}-\mathrm{TC}=\mathrm{PQ}-\mathrm{AVC}(\mathrm{Q})-\mathrm{TFC}$

$$
\Delta \pi=\mathrm{P}(\Delta \mathrm{Q})-\operatorname{AVC}(\Delta \mathrm{Q}) \quad \text { (as TFC is fixed or constant) }
$$

$\mathrm{E} \pi=\frac{[\mathrm{P}(\Delta \mathrm{Q})-\mathrm{AVC}(\Delta \mathrm{Q})] /[\mathrm{PQ}-(\mathrm{AVC})(\mathrm{Q})]-\mathrm{TFC}}{\Delta Q / Q}=\frac{Q(P-A V C)}{Q(P-A V C)-T F C}$

## Example

There are two firms such as Firm-A and Firm-B. Let us estimate the profit elasticity for both the firms to analyze the leverage effect given the information on $\mathrm{P}, \mathrm{AVC}, \mathrm{TFC}, \mathrm{Q}$ and $\pi$. The comparison between these two firms in this context is shown as follows.

## Estimation of Profit Elasticity for Firm A \& B

|  | Firm-A <br> P=Rs.10, <br> AVC=Rs.5 <br> TFC=Rs. 1000 | Firm-B <br> P=Rs.10 <br> AVC=Rs.2 <br> TFC=Rs. 4000 | Profit Elasticity |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  | Rate of Output | Profit A | Profit B | E $\pi$ of Firm A |
| 1000 | 4000 | 4000 | 1.25 | 2.00 |
| 1500 | 6500 | 8000 | 1.15 | 1.50 |
| 2000 | 9000 | 12000 | 1.11 | 1.33 |
| 2500 | 11500 | 14000 | 1.09 | 1.25 |
| 3000 | 14000 | 16000 | 1.07 | 1.20 |

It is observed from the above table that, if both firms are producing the same rate of output, for any change in output the percentage change in profit will be greater for B than for A as the profit elasticity is found higher for B relative to that of A . Thus it can be said that the greater the total fixed cost of Firm-B is greater compared to that of A as Fir B has relatively the higher profit elasticity which indicates higher operating leverage for Firm B than that of A. However, the managerial decision in this context depends on the trade-off between risk and return.

### 5.1.4 Summary

The concept of Profit is interpreted in different ways by different people, even though it is a commonly used in economics as the residual of the difference between total income and total cost. Profit is also defined as Entrepreneur's Reward. Profit can be gross and net. Several theories have been put forward by way of explanation of profit. Some of the important theories of profit are Rent Theory, Wage Theory, Risk Theory, Dynamic Theory, Schumpeter's Innovation Theory, Uncertainty Bearing Theory and Marginal Productivity Theory of Profit.

Break even analysis is a specific method of presenting and studying the relationship between Cost, Volume and Profit. It is important tool of the management to analyze the impact of change in volume, price, costs and mix on profit. The Break-even point (BEP) can be defined as a point at which a firm neither earn any profit nor suffers any loss (as $\mathrm{TC}=\mathrm{TR}$ at BEP ).Production and Sale below the BEP incurs loss and above the BEP creates profit. In other words at break even such volume of goods or Services are sold by the firm which only able to recover at least total cost i.e. the fixed and variable operating costs. This is one of the useful tools for profit planning and decision making for effective business.

### 5.1.5 Selected Questions

1. Define Profit. Discuss in brief various theories of Profit.
2. Discuss the Risk and Dynamic theories of profit.
3. Define Break- even point. Estimate the BEP with the help of an example.
4. What is BEP? How it is helpful for profit planning and decision making.

### 5.2 CHAPTER

## BUSINESS CYCLE

## Objectives

After going through this unit, you should be able to:

- Understand the concept of business cycle
- Examine the causes of business cycle
- Analyse the remedial measures of business cycle
- Analyse the theories of business cycle


## Structure

5.2.1 Introduction- Concept of business cycle
5.2.2 Phases of business cycle
5.2.3 Causes of business cycle
5.2.4 Effects of business cycle
5.2.5 Remedial measures of business cycle
5.2.6 Theories of Business cycle
5.2.7 Summary
5.2.8 Self-Assessment Questions

### 5.2.1 Introduction- Concept of Business Cycle

Business cycle or trade cycle or economic cycle is a part of the capitalist system and usually measured by considering the growth rate of real gross domestic product. It refers to the phenomenon of cyclical booms and depressions. The period of high income, output and employment has been called the period of expansion, boom, upswing or prosperity, and the period of low income, output and employment has been described as contraction, recession, downswing or depression. In a business cycle, there are wave-like fluctuations in aggregate employment, income, output and price level. In other words, these fluctuations in economic activity are recurrent and have been occurring periodically in a more or less regular fashion. Therefore, these fluctuations have been called business cycles. It may be noted that calling these fluctuations as 'cycles' means they are periodic and occur regularly, though perfect regularity has not been observed. However, despite the often-applied term cycles, these fluctuations in economic activity do not exhibit uniform or predictable periodicity. The term business cycle has been defined in various ways by different economists.

Prof. Haberler defines the business cycle as "an alternation of periods of prosperity and depression of good and bad trade". According to Keynes "A trade cycle is composed of periods of good trade characterized by rising prices and low unemployment percentage, altering with periods of bad trade characterized by falling prices and high unemployment percentages." According to Gordon's definition "Business cycles consist of recurring alternation of expansion and contraction in aggregate economic activity, the alternating movements in each direction being self-reinforcing and pervading virtually, all parts of the economy." According to the definition of Estey "Cyclical fluctuations are characterized by alternating waves of expansion and contraction. They do not have a fixed rhythm, but they are cycles in that the phases of contraction and expansion recur frequently and in fairly similar patterns."

## Characteristics or Business Cycles:

Business cycles possess the following characteristics:

- Cyclical fluctuations are wave-like movements.
- Fluctuations are recurrent in nature.
- They are non-periodic or irregular.
- They occur in such aggregate variables as output, income, employment and prices.
- Fluctuations occur not only in the level of production but also simultaneously in other variables such as employment, investment, consumption, rate of interest and price level.
- These variables move at about the same time in the same direction but at different rates.
- Relatively wide fluctuations in output and employment but small fluctuations in prices are experienced by the durable goods industries whereas relatively wide fluctuations in prices but small fluctuations in output and employment are experienced by nondurable goods industries.
- Business cycles are neither seasonal fluctuations nor secular trends.
- Upswings and downswings are cumulative in their effects.
- Business cycles are synchronic (i.e. changes are not confined to any single industry or sector but are occurring simultaneously in all industries or sectors of the economy).
- The immediate impact of depression and expansion is on the inventories of goods.
- The profits fluctuate more than any other type of income as the occurrence of business cycle causes a lot of uncertainty for businessmen and makes it difficult to forecast the economic conditions.
- The business cycles are international in character i.e. once started in one country they spread to other countries through trade relations between them.

It can be inferred from the characteristics that business cycles are recurrent fluctuations in aggregate employment, income, output and price level. In other words, the business cycle is the natural rise and fall of economic growth that occurs over time. Thus, the cycle is a useful tool for analyzing the economy in general and helpful for making better financial decisions in particular.

### 5.2.2 Phases of Business Cycles:

Business cycles have shown distinct phases to understand their underlying causes. These phases have been called by different names by different economists

Business Cycle has four phases:

1. Depression or Contraction or Deflation
2. Recovery
3. Prosperity or Expansion or Boom or Inflation
4. Recession


The Phases of Business Cycle

## Depression or Deflation

The depression or deflation is characterized by a fall in the prices of output and thereby increase in unemployment level (i.e. involuntary unemployment appears on a large scale) caused by a general decline in the economic activity. The Great Depression of 1930's in USA is an example of the worst effect of depression on an economy. Recession merges into depression when there is a general decline in economic activity. During Depression there is considerable reduction in the production of goods and services, employment, income, demand and prices. There is a lot of excess capacity as industries producing capital goods and consumer goods work much below their capacity due to lack of demand. Capital goods and durable consumer goods industries are especially hit hard during depression. The forces affecting decline in economic activities are cumulative and self-reinforcing and the economy is at the depression. The depression may be short-lived or it may continue at the bottom for considerable time. But sooner or later limiting forces are set in motion which ultimately tends to bring the contraction phase to end and pave the way for the revival. A cycle is thus complete.

## Recovery:

The recovery is the turning point from depression into expansion. It leads to increased demand. To meet this increased demand, investment and employment increase. The stimulation of investment brings about the revival or recovery of the economy. As investment
rises, this causes induced increase in consumption. As a result industries start producing more and excess capacity is now put into full use due to the revival of aggregate demand. Employment of labour increases and rate of unemployment falls. With this the cycle is complete. Thus the cumulative process of increase in investment, employment, output, income and prices feeds upon itself and becomes self-reinforcing. Ultimately, revival enters the prosperity phase.

## Prosperity or Inflation

The prosperity or inflation is characterized by a rise in the prices of output. In this phase, both output and employment increase till the full employment of resources and production is at the highest possible level with the given productive resources. There is no involuntary unemployment (the unemployment of frictional and structural types only prevails). In other words, in this phase, demand, output, employment and income are at a high level. They tend to raise prices. The gap between prices and costs increases the margin of profit. The increase of profit and the prospect of its continuance commonly cause a rapid rise in stock market values. The economy is engulfed in waves of optimism. Larger profit expectations further increase investment which is helped by liberal bank credit. They lead to considerable expansion in economic activity by increasing the demand for consumer goods and further raising the price level. In this way, the expansionary process becomes cumulative and selfreinforcing until the economy reaches a very high level of production, known as the peak or boom.

The peak or prosperity may lead the economy to over full employment and to inflationary rise in prices. It is a symptom of the end of the prosperity phase and the beginning of the recession. It means something may occur, whether banks start reducing credit or profit expectations change adversely and businessmen become pessimistic about future state of the economy that brings an end to the expansion or prosperity phase. However, economists differ regarding the possible causes of the end of prosperity and start of downswing in economic activity.

## Recession:

The downward descend from the 'peak' (which is of a short duration) gives rise to Recession. Thus Recession marks the turning period between expansion or inflation and depression or
deflation. This phase shows the beginning of the decline of prices. As a result, profit margins decline further because costs start overtaking prices. Some firms close down. Others reduce production and try to sell out accumulated stocks. Investment, employment, income and demand decline. This process becomes cumulative. Recession may be mild or severe.

### 5.2.3 Causes of Business Cycles:

There are various causes of business cycles. Some of them are attributed to monetary and non-monetary factors while others to psychological factors. Samuelson attributes business cycles to external and internal factors as discussed below.

## External Factors:

The external factors emphasize the causes of business cycles in the fluctuations of something outside the economic system. Such external factors are sunspots, wars, revolutions, political events, gold discoveries, growth rate of population, migrations, discoveries and innovations. These outside factors change the level of national income by affecting either the investment or consumption component of aggregate demand. All these external factors have been responsible for booms in business cycles from time to time.

## Internal Factors:

The internal factors relate to mechanisms within the economic system itself which will give rise to self-generating business cycles, so that every expansion will breed recession and contraction, and every contraction will in turn breed revival and expansion, in a repeating manner. Haberler divides the internal factors into monetary and non-monetary as given below.

1. Bank Credit: Cyclical fluctuations are caused by expansion and contraction of bank credit. An increase in the money supply brings about prosperity and a decrease in the money supply leads to depression.
2. Over-Saving or Under Consumption: Business cycles are caused by over saving or under-consumption. Over saving leads to bulk production of consumer goods and hence it leads to a boom. But under-consumption brings a fall in the demand for consumer goods which in turn leads to a fall in the prices of consumer goods and in the income of the producers that result in depression.
3. Over-Investment: It is bank loans which lead to over-investment in capital goods industries relative to consumer goods industries that ultimately bring depression in the economy. When the total money supply exceeds the amount of voluntary savings, it leads to increase in the investment activity and ultimately to a boom. But banks cannot continue to give credit for long due to the shortage of voluntary savings. As a result, production will decline which will bring about a depression. Thus it is over-investment in the capital goods industries which is the cause of a boom and a depression.
4. Competition: One of the main causes of business cycles is the existence of competition in an economy which leads to over-production relative to demand and hence fall in the prices that leads to depression. Under competitive conditions, firms produce in anticipation of demand. The profit motive attracts new firms. Production increases giving rise to cost of production and hence prices of output that leads to boom.
5. Psychological Causes: The alternating waves of "over optimism" and "over pessimism" are the sole causes of the industrial fluctuations. These alternating waves of over- optimism (over-production) and over-pessimism (under-production) are the main causes of business cycles.
6. Innovations: According to Schumpeter, innovations in the structure of an economy are the source of economic fluctuations. To him, "the cause of depression is prosperity." The boom consists in the carrying out of innovations in the industrial and commercial fields. The cyclical upswing is set in motion when an innovator starts making investment in his innovation of a new product. When there is glut of new products in the market, their prices fall, and profit margins of entrepreneurs are reduced. Thus the economy enters into depression.
7. Marginal Efficiency of Capital (MEC): Fluctuations in the rate of investment are caused mainly by fluctuations in the MEC. The MEC depends on the supply price of capital assets and their prospective yield. It is fluctuations in the MEC which are the principal cause of cyclical fluctuations.

To conclude with Samuelson, business cycles are caused both by external and internal factors. The economic system responds to fluctuations in external factors according to its internal factors, and vice versa.

### 5.2.4 Effects of Business Cycles:

Business cycles have both good and bad effects depending upon whether the economy is passing through a phase of prosperity or depression.

In the prosperity phase, "the real income consumed, real income produced and the level of employment are high or rising and there are no idle or unemployed workers or very few of either." There is general increase in economic activity: aggregate output, demand, employment and income are at a high level. Prices are rising. Profits are increasing. Stock markets are rapidly reaching new heights. Investments are increasing with liberal bank credit. This entire process is cumulative and self-reinforcing.

But different sections of the society are affected differently during the prosperity phase. The landless, factory and agricultural workers and middle classes suffer because their wages and salaries are more or less fixed but the prices of commodities rise continuously. They become poorer. On the other hand, businessmen, traders, industrialists, real estate holders, speculators, landlords, shareholders and others with variable incomes gain. Thus the rich become richer and the poor poorer.

The social effects are also bad. Lured by profit, there is hoarding black-marketing, adulteration, production of substandard goods, speculation, etc. Corruption spreads in every walk of life. When the economy is nearing the full employment level of resources, the illeffects on production start appearing. Rising prices of raw materials and increase in wages raise costs of production. As a result, profit margins decline. There is rise in interest rates due to scarcity of capital which makes investment costly.

These two factors lower business expectations. Lastly, the demand for consumer goods does not rise due to inflationary rise in prices. This leads to piling up of inventories (stocks) with producers and traders. Thus sales lag behind production. There is decline is prices. Producers, businessmen and traders become pessimists and the recession starts.

During recession, profit margins decline further because costs start rising more than prices. Some firms close down. Others reduce production and try to sell accumulated stocks. Investment, output, employment, income, demand and prices decline further. This process becomes cumulative and recession merges into depression.

During a depression, there is mass unemployment. Prices, profits and wages are at their lowest levels. Demand for goods and services is the minimum. Investment, bank deposits and bank loans are negligible. Construction of all types of capital goods, buildings, etc. is at a standstill. There is mass unemployment in the economy. The government revenue from the direct and indirect taxes declines. The real burden of the debt increases. The economic development of the country suffers.

## Who Measures the Business Cycle?

The National Bureau of Economic Research determines business cycle stages using quarterly GDP growth rates. It also uses monthly economic indicators, such as employment, real personal income, industrial production, and retail sales. It takes time to analyze this data, so the NBER doesn't tell you the phase until after it's begun. But you can look at the indicators yourself to determine what phase of the business cycle we are currently in.

### 5.2.5 Measures to Control Business Cycles:

There are various measures to control business cycles or fluctuations in an economy. In other words the measures aim at stabilizing economic activity so as to avoid the ill-effects of a boom (or inflation) and a depression (or deflation). The measures adopted to control business cycles are Monetary Policy, Fiscal Policy and Direct Controls as discussed below. However, Monetary Policy and Fiscal Policy are the measures commonly adopted whereas the Direct controls are adopted during exceptional or special cases to control business cycles.

## Monetary Policy:

Monetary policy refers to the policy adopted by the Central Bank of a country (viz. RBI in India) pertaining to the regulations of money supply. The monetary policy is operated by the central bank through a number of measures to control the quantity and quality of credit which can be termed as Quantitative Measures and Qualitative Measures.

The excess of money supply causes inflation whereas shortage of money supply causes deflation in the economy. Thus, the contractionary and expansionary monetary policy through the management of credit creation capacity of banks is very helpful 'in controlling trade cycle in the economy. During the boom or prosperity or inflation, central bank takes measures to reduce the supply of money whereas during depression or deflation it takes measures to increase in supply of money with the help of Quantitative measure and Qualitative Measures to yield the desired results.

Monetary policy is very effective in controlling inflation, because it can help in reducing credit advanced by commercial banks which will reduce the flow of money supply that reduces the purchasing power/demand and hence price of goods and services will decrease. Similarly, during depression or deflation it can help in increasing credit advanced by commercial banks which will lead to increase in flow of money supply that increases the purchasing power/demand leading to increase in production, employment, income, demand and hence price of goods and services will increase. The central bank adopts a dear money policy to control excess money supply in the economy. To control a recession or depression, the central bank follows an easy or cheap monetary policy

The quantitative measures or instruments mainly include: Reserve Ratios (CRR and SLR), Open Market Operations, Bank Rate and Liquidity Adjustment (Repo and Reverse Repo) etc. The Qualitative measures are Margin requirement, Consumer Credit Regulation, Selective Credit Control, Moral Suasion, Credit Rationing, and Direct action (by RBI on Banks) etc..

## Quantitative Measures

Cash Reserve Ratio (CRR): A bank set aside this much as reserve. Bank cannot lend it to anyone. Bank earns no interest rate or profit on this. In other words, under CRR a certain percentage of the total bank deposit has to be kept in the current account with RBI which means banks do not have access to that much amount for any economic or commercial activity.

Statutory Liquidity Ratio (SLR): A Bank has to set aside this much of money as reserve in the form of cash/gold reserve/ RBI approved securities before providing credit to the customers).

Open Market Operation (OMO) : Buying and Selling of Government securities by RBI in open market to control money supply.

Bank Rate: When banks borrow long term funds from RBI, they have to pay this much interest rate to RBI. It is also termed as a rate of discount charged by RBI on its loans and advances to a commercial bank

Repo Rate: If client borrows money from RBI (for short-term), then client has to pay this much interest rate to RBI (as per the prevalent rate as decided by RBI).

Reverse Repo Rate: If client lends money to RBI (for short-term), then RBI has to pay this much interest rate to client. RBI made a simple formula that Reverse Repo Rate $=$ Repo Rate Minus $1 \%$. (e.g. if $R R=8 \%, R R R=8 \%-1 \%=7 \%$.). It's value is linked with repo and hence it cannot be increases/decreased independently as a controlling measures of business cycle..

## Qualitative Measures

Margin Requirements: When lending against a collateral/security (in form of property / shares/ gold etc.), the commercial banks retain a certain margin percentage as hedge against market fluctuations. The Percentage of Minimum margin is decided by RBI and used as an instrument in credit regulation. If the minimum margin is higher, less credit is extended and this discourages the credit extension or borrowings. It has direct impact on money supply.

Consumer Credit Regulation: controlling credit thereby money supply by RBI by changing down payment and installment (EMI) rules.

Selective Credit Control: RBI can specially instruct bankers not to give loans to traders of certain commodities even if the said trader is ready to mortgage his share / bonds / factory / machine / vehicle / anything. This prevents speculations/ hoarding of commodities using money borrowed from banks.

Moral Suasion: The central bank persuades commercial banks to expand or restrict credit in line with the credit policy by appealing in written or oral. It is considered as a psychological device to selectively encourage or discourage industrial lending. However, these policies are persuasive in nature and cannot be enforced. For Example, RBI tries to persuade the bankers to xyz things like please reduce giving automobile loans-instead park your money in govt. securities (above the SLR requirement), RBI has reduced repo rate, now you also reduce your base rate. RBI will try to influence bankers via -direct meeting, conference, giving media statements etc.

Rationing of Credit: Central bank will decide the 'upper limit' to loans in each sector to restrict credit beyond certain limit.

Direct Action: RBI gives punishment to erring banks (punishment like penal interest, refuses to lend them money from LAF etc. and in worst case even cancels their license) if not obliged to the directions of RBI to regulate credit while controlling business cycle.

## Instruments of Monetary Policy to control Inflation \& Deflation (Business Cycle)

| Instruments of Monetary Policy | To control Inflation <br> (Dear Money policy) | To control Deflation <br> (Cheap Money policy) |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| QUANTITATIVE MEASURES |  |  |
| Cash Reserve Ratio (CRR) | Increase | Decrease |
| Statutory Liquidity Ratio (SLR) | Increase | Decrease |
| Open Market Operation (OMO) | RBI sell Securities | RBIU buys Securities |
| Bank Rate | Increase | Decrease |
| Repo Rate | Increase | Decrease |
| QUALITATIVE MEASURES |  | Decrease |
| Margin Requirements | Increase |  |


| Consumer Credit Regulation | Increase EMI | Decrease EMI |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Selective Credit Control | Instruct bankers not to give <br> loans to traders of certain <br> commodities despite their <br> mortgage to prevent | Instruct bankers to give <br> loans to traders of all <br> lommodities to raise <br> speculations/ hoarding of <br> lomestment using money <br> borrowed from banks. |
|  | borrowed from banks. |  |
| Moral Suasion | The central bank <br> persuades commercial <br> banks to restrict credit | The central bank <br> persuades commercial <br> banks to expand credit |
| Rationing of Credit | Central bank will decide <br> upper limit to loans in each | Central bank will made <br> upper limit to loans <br> sector to restrict credit |
| flexible in each sector to |  |  |
| expand credit |  |  |

## Limitations of Monetary Policy:

The monetary policy is not so effective as to control a boom or inflation if it is due to costpush factors. So far as depression is concerned, the experience of the Great Depression of 1930s tells us that when there is pessimism among businessmen, the success of monetary policy is less effective as the businessmen have no inclination to borrow even when the interest rate is very low. Similarly, consumers who are faced with reduced incomes and unemployment cut down their consumption expenditure. Neither the central bank nor the commercial banks are able to induce businessmen and consumers to raise the aggregate demand. Thus the success of monetary policy to control economic fluctuations is very limited. During the period of recession its effectiveness is controversial. Further, due to
the inherent characteristics of underdeveloped economy like India the effectiveness of monetary policy is often found less effective.

Monetary policy alone is not capable of controlling business cycles. It should, therefore, be supplemented by compensatory fiscal policy.

## Fiscal Policy:

Fiscal policy is a policy framed by the government to raise revenue and to incur expenditure. The fiscal policy is also called as budgetary policy. So, the fiscal policy is concerned with the government revenue and government expenditure. In broad term fiscal policy refers to "that segment of national economic policy, which is primarily concerned with the receipts and expenditure of central government". In other words, Fiscal policy refers to the policy of the government with regard to taxation, public expenditure and public borrowings. The fiscal policy aims at achieving economic growth, equity, stability and distributive justice.

Besides the monetary policy the Fiscal policy is also an effective tool to control the problems of Business cycle, which can be termed as stabilization role of fiscal policy as discussed below. Fiscal measures are highly effective for controlling excessive government expenditure, personal consumption expenditure, and private and public investment during a boom. On the other hand, they help in increasing government expenditure, personal consumption expenditure and private and public investment during a depression.

Policy during Boom or Inflation: During a boom, the government tries to reduce public expenditure in order to reduce its demand for goods and services and thereby reducing prices. This measure is supplemented by taxation. To cut personal expenditure, the government raises the rates of personal, corporate and commodity taxes. Another fiscal measure which is usually adopted is to borrow more from the public which has the effect of reducing the money supply with the public.

Policy during Depression or Deflation: During a depression, the government increases public expenditure, reduces taxes and public debt. A budget deficit policy is normally
adopted by the government but would not rely on public debt to finance the deficit. These measures tend to raise aggregate demand, output, income, employment and prices.
Instruments of Fiscal Policy to control Inflation \& Deflation (Business Cycle)

| Instruments of <br> Fiscal Policy | To control Inflation <br> (Contractionary Fiscal policy) | To control Deflation <br> (Expansionary Fiscal policy) |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Public Expenditure | Decrease | Increase |
| Taxation | Increase | Decrease |
| Public Debt | Increase | Decrease |

## Limitations of Fiscal Policy

The effectiveness of anti-cyclical fiscal policy depends upon proper timing of policy action and the nature and volume of public works and their planning. Further, the inherent features of underdeveloped economy like India affects adverse the operational aspects of fiscal policy. The instruments of fiscal policy are also often influenced by political factors in the underdeveloped economy like India that also adversely affects the operational modalities of the policy.

## Direct Controls

This method is to ensure proper allocation of resources for the purpose of price stability. They are meant to affect strategic points of the economy. They affect particular consumers and producers. They are in the form of rationing licensing, price and wage controls, export duties, exchange controls, quotas, monopoly control, etc. They are more effective in overcoming bottlenecks and shortages arising from inflationary pressures. Their success depends on the existence of an efficient and honest administration. Otherwise, they lead to black marketing, corruption, long queues, speculation, etc. Therefore, they should be resorted to only in emergencies like war, crop failures and hyper-inflation.

## Conclusions:

The cyclical fluctuations are inherent in the capitalist system and also found in mixed and other economic systems. They cannot be eliminated completely. Some fluctuations may be
beneficial for economic growth and others may be undesirable. Stabilization policy should, therefore, control undesirable fluctuations.

Monetary policy taken alone may not suffice to check cyclical business fluctuations and hence it should be properly integrated with a suitable fiscal policy to achieve the desired results. Keynes and the Keynesians such as Alvin Hansen and others have recommended compensatory finance or compensatory fiscal policy to bring about stabilization of business activity. It can be said that of the various instruments of stabilizations policy, no single method is sufficient to control cyclical fluctuations. This is because monetary policy is easy to apply but less effective while fiscal measures and direct controls are difficult to operate but are more effective. Therefore, it can be suggested that all methods be used simultaneously. It can also be a point to note that the right remedy for the trade cycles has not been found as yet. Therefore, its permanent remedy cannot exist.

### 5.2.6 Theories of Business Cycles

Some of the most important theories of business cycles are as follows:

1. Pure Monetary Theory
2. Monetary Over-Investment Theory
3. Schumpeter's Theory of Innovation
4. Keynes Theory
5. Samuelson's Model of Multiplier Accelerator Interaction
6. Hicks's Theory.

A number of theories have been developed by different economists from time to time to understand the concept of business cycles. In the first half of twentieth century, various new and important concepts related to business cycles come into existence. However, in nineteenth century, many of the classical economists, such as Adam Smith, Miller, and Ricardo, have conducted a study on business cycles. They linked economic activities with the Say's law, which states that supply creates its own demand. They believed that stability of an economy depends on market forces. After that, many other economists, such as Keynes and Hick, had provided a framework to understand business cycles.

The different theories of business cycles are explained as follows:

## 1. Pure Monetary Theory:

The monetary and credit system of an economy were considered by the traditional theorists to analyze business cycles. Thus, it is called as monetary theory of business cycle. This theory envisages that the business cycle is a result of changes in monetary and credit market conditions. According to Hawtrey, the main supporter of this theory, business cycles are the continuous phases of inflation and deflation. In other words changes in an economy take place due to changes in the flow of money. It means an increase in money supply leads to an increase in prices, profits, and total output resulting in the growth of an economy whereas a fall in money supply leads to a decrease in prices, profit, and total output resulting to decline of an economy. Apart from this, Hawtrey also advocated the role of credit mechanism in influencing the flow of money in the economy as the banking system plays an important role in increasing money flow by providing credit.

An economy shows growth when the volume of bank credit increases as because it helps the individuals or organizations to perform various business activities which leads to increase in various investment opportunities and resulted in higher production. When production increases, the supply of the products also increases and if the rate of increase in demand of products in the market is found higher than the rate of increase in supply the prices of products increases. Therefore, credit expansion helps in expansion of economy. On the contrary, the economic condition is reversed when the flow of bank credit is decreasing. It means when the flow of bank credit decreases, the investment is found reduced by businessmen. This leads to the decrease in the demand for consumer and capital goods, prices, and consumption. This marks the symptoms of recession.

## Some of the criticisms against the pure monetary theory:

(a) The business cycle is not only affected by monetary factor but also by various nonmonetary factors viz. new investment demands, cost structure, and expectations of businessmen etc.
(b) This theory fails to explain the intermediary phases but only describes the expansion and recession phases of business cycles.
(c) This theory assumes that businessmen are more sensitive to the interest rates but in practice they are more concerned about the future opportunities.

## 2. Monetary Over-Investment Theory:

This theory given by Hayek mainly deals with the imbalance between actual and desired investments. According to this theory, the actual investment is much higher than the desired investment. The investment and consumption patterns of an economy should match with each other to bring the economy in equilibrium and for stabilizing this equilibrium; the voluntary savings should be equal to actual investment in an economy as explained by this theory. In other words, the total investment is distributed in an economy in such a way its demand and supply are equal implying that the investment at every level and for every product in the whole economy is equal. As a result, there would be no expansion and contraction and the economy would always be in equilibrium.

The fluctuation in money supply and investment-saving relations leads to the changes in economic activities. Assuming voluntary savings are constant the investment-saving relations are affected when there is an increase in investment opportunities due to several reasons such as low interest rates, increased marginal efficiency of capital, and increase in expectations of businessmen etc. This may result in overinvestment mainly in capital goods industries remaining the consumption / consumer goods industries unaffected.

Consequently, profit increases with increase in investment opportunities, which further results in an increase in the demand for various products and services and it exceeds the supply of products and services. This leads to inflation in the economy. Further, the purchasing power of individuals is adversely affected by inflation and hence the real demand for products does not increase at the same rate at which the investment increases. It indicates that the real investment is done at the cost of real consumption. So the balance between the investment and consumer demand is disturbed. As a result, it is difficult to maintain the current rate of investment. The demand of consumer goods would be dependent on the income of individuals. An increase in the income level would result in the increase of consumer goods and hence the increase in demand for consumer goods is more than the increase in capital goods. Therefore, more investment may be made in consumer goods rather than in capital goods. Consequently, the demand for bank credit also increases. But the bankers may not be ready to lend money because of the demand for funds from both consumer and capital goods industry. This leads to recession in the economy. As a result,
economic activities, such as employment, investment, savings, consumption, and prices of goods and services, start declining.

## Some of the limitations of monetary over-investment theory:

a. The linkage between the the bank credit business cycles is not explained elaborately.
b. This theory considers interest rate as the most important factor affecting investment but there are several other factors, such as capital goods cost and businessmen expectations, which can influence investment.
c. The focus on balance between consumer goods and investment made in this theory is not much required.

## 3. Schumpeter's Theory of Innovation:

The Schumpeter's theory of innovation advocates that business innovations are responsible for rapid changes in investment and business fluctuations.

According to Schumpeter "Business cycles are almost exclusively the result of innovations in the industrial and commercial organization". Moreover, according to him, innovation refers to an application of a new technique of production or new machinery or a new concept to reduce cost and increase profit. In addition, he propounded that innovations are responsible for the occurrence of business cycles. He also designed a model having two stages, namely, first approximation and second approximation.

The two stages of the model are discussed as follows:
(a) First Approximation: It deals with the effect of innovatory ideas on an economy in the beginning. First approximation is the startup stage of innovation in which the economy is in equilibrium. This implies when Marginal Cost (MC) is equal to Marginal Revenue (MR) and Average Cost (AC) is equal to price. In addition, at this stage, there is no involuntary unemployment.

In equilibrium, organizations lack idle funds or surplus funds to invest. In such a case, banks are the only source of funds for innovators. When the innovators get the desired fund from banks, they purchase inputs for production at a higher price to make these inputs available only for innovation purposes. Increase in prices of inputs result in the rise of prices. Over time, competitors also start copying innovation and acquire funds from bank. As a result, the output and profit of organizations start increasing. However, after a certain point of time, profit shows decline with a decrease in output prices. Simultaneously, debtors need to repay their debts to bank. This leads to decrease in the flow of money, which finally results in recession.
(b) Second Approximation: It deals with the subsequent effects of first approximation. It is related to the speculation of future economic conditions. In first approximation, it is assumed by investors that the expansion phase would not be affected in future, especially in capital goods industries. On the basis of this belief, investors take large amounts of money from banks. In addition, in this stage, customers perceive an increase in the durable goods in future and therefore, start purchasing goods at present by borrowing funds. When the prices start falling, debtors are in the worst situation because they are not able to repay loan and meet their basic needs. This leads to depression in the economy.

## 4. Keynes Theory:

Keynes theory was developed in 1930s, which was the period when whole world was going through great depression. This theory of Keynes is the reply to classical economists. According to classical economists, if there is high unemployment condition in an economy, then economic forces, such as demand and supply, would act in a manner to bring back full employment condition.

In his theory of business cycles, Keynes advocated that the total demand helps in the determination of various economic factors, such as income, employment, and output. The total demand refers to the demand of consumer and capital goods. Thus in the case when total demand is more, total investment and expenditure on products and services is more, the level of production would increase. When the level of production increases, it results in the increase of employment opportunities and income level. However, if the total demand is low, the level of production would also be less. Consequently, the income, output and investment would also be low. Therefore, changes in income and output level are produced by changes in
total demand. The total demand is further affected by changes in the demand of investment, which depends on the rate of interest and expected rate of profit.

Keynes referred expected rate of profit as the marginal efficiency of capital (MEC). Expected rate of profit is the difference between the expected revenue generated by the capital employed and the cost incurred to employ that capital. In case, the expected rate of profit is greater than the current rate of interest, then the investors would invest more. On the other hand, the MEC is determined by expected return from capital goods and cost involved in the replacement of capital goods. MEC increases due to new inventions or innovations in economic factors, such as product, production technique, investment option, assuming that prices would rise in future. On the other hand, it decreases due to various reasons, such as decrease in prices, increase in costs, and inefficiency of the production process.

According to Keynesian theory, in the expansion phase of business cycle, investors are positive about economic conditions and hence they overestimate the rate of return from an investment. The rate of return increases until the full employment condition is not achieved

When the economy is on the path of achieving full employment, this phase is termed as boom phase. In the boom phase, investors are not able to diagnose the fall in MEC and even do not consider the rate of interest. As a result, the profit from investments starts falling due to the increase in the cost of investment and production of goods and services. This situation results in the contraction or recession in economy. This is because the rate of decrease in the MEC is more than that of current rate of interest. In addition, in this situation, investment opportunities shrink. Banks are not also able to provide credit because of the lack of funds.

When current rate of interest is higher, it encourages people to save rather than invest. As a result, the demand for consumer and capital goods decreases. Further, the income and employment level decreases and economy reaches to the phase of depression.

Keynes has proposed three types of propensities to understand business cycles. These are propensity to save, propensity to consume, and propensity of marginal efficiency of capital. He has also developed a concept of multiplier that represents changes in income level produced by the changes in investment.

Keynes also advocated that the expansion of business cycle occurs due to increase in marginal efficiency of capital. This encourages investors (including individuals and organizations) to invest. Organizations replace their capital goods and start production. As a result, the income of individuals increases, which further increases the rate of consumption. This increases the profit of organizations, which finally lead to an increase in the total income and investment level of an economy. This marks the recovery phase of an economy.

## Some points of criticism of Keynes theory are as follows:

a. Fails to explain the recurrence of business cycles.
b. Ignores the accelerator's role to describe business cycles. Because a business cycle can better
be explained by multiplier-acceleration interaction.
c. Offers only a systematic framework for business cycles, not the whole concept.

## 5. Samuelson's Model of Multiplier Accelerator Interaction:

The economists of post-Keynesian period emphasized the need of both multiplier and accelerator concepts to explain business cycles. Samuelson's model of multiplier accelerator interaction was the first model that represents interaction between these two concepts.

In his model, Samuelson has described the way the multiplier and accelerator interact with each other for generating income and increasing consumption and demand of investment. He also describes how these two factors are responsible for creating economic fluctuations.

Samuelson used two concepts, namely, autonomous and derived investment, to explain his model. Autonomous investment refers to the investment due to exogenous factors, such as new product, production technique, and market. On the other hand, derived investment refers to the increase in the investment of capital goods produced due to increase in the demand of consumer goods. When autonomous investment occurs in an economy, the income level also increases. This brought the role of multiplier into account. The income level helps in determining the marginal propensity to consume. If the income level increases, then the demand for consumer goods also increases. This encourages organizations to invest more to
develop advanced production techniques and increase production for meeting consumer demand. Therefore, the consumption affects the demand of investment. This is referred as derived investment. This marks the starting of the acceleration process, which results in further increase in income level.

An increase in the income level would increase the demand of consumer goods. In this manner, the multiplier and accelerator interact with each other and make the income grow at a much higher rate than expected. Autonomous investment leads to multiplier effect that result in derived investment. This is called acceleration of investment. Derived investment would make the accelerator to come into action. This is termed as multiplier-acceleration interaction.

To explain business cycles Samuelson made certain assumptions such as (i) the production capacity is limited, (ii) consumption takes place after a gap of one year, (iii) there would be a gap of one year between the increase in consumption and increase in the demand of investment and (iv) there would be no government activity and foreign trade in the economy.

According to the assumption that there would be no government activity and foreign trade, the equilibrium would be achieved when
$\mathbf{Y}_{\mathrm{t}}=\mathbf{C}_{\mathrm{t}}+\mathbf{I}_{\mathbf{t}}$
Where, $\mathrm{Y}_{\mathrm{t}}=$ National income
$\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{t}}=$ Total consumption expenditure
$\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{t}}=$ Investment expenditure
$\mathrm{t}=$ Time period

According to the assumption that consumption takes place after a gap of one year, the consumption function would be represented as follows:
$\mathbf{C l}_{\mathrm{t}}=\boldsymbol{\alpha} \mathbf{Y}_{\mathrm{t}-1}$
Where, $\mathrm{Y}_{\mathrm{t}-1}=$ Income for $\mathrm{t}-1$ time period
$\alpha=\Delta \mathrm{C} / \Delta \mathrm{Y}$ (multiplier propensity to consume)

Investment and consumption has a time lag of one year; therefore, the investment function can be expressed a follows:
$\mathbf{I}_{\mathrm{t}}=\mathbf{b}\left(\mathbf{C}_{\mathrm{t}}-\mathbf{C}_{\mathrm{t}-1}\right)$

Where, $\mathrm{b}=$ capital/output ratio (helps in determination of acceleration)

By putting the value of $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{t}}$ and $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{t}}$ in the first equation of national income, we get
$\mathbf{Y}_{\mathbf{t}}=\boldsymbol{\alpha} \mathbf{Y}_{\mathbf{t}-\mathbf{1}}+\mathbf{b}\left(\mathbf{C}_{\mathbf{t}}-\mathbf{C}_{\mathbf{t}-1}\right)$
If $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{t}}=\alpha \mathrm{Y}_{\mathrm{t}-1}$, then $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{t}-1}=\alpha \mathrm{Y}_{\mathrm{t}-2}$. Putting the value of $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{t}-1}$ in the preceding equation, we get
$\mathrm{Y}_{\mathrm{t}}=\alpha \mathrm{Y}_{\mathrm{t}-1}+\mathrm{b}\left(\alpha \mathrm{Y}_{\mathrm{t}-1}-\alpha \mathrm{Y}_{\mathrm{t}-2}\right)$
$\mathbf{Y}_{\mathbf{t}}=\boldsymbol{\alpha}(\mathbf{1}+\mathbf{b}) \mathbf{Y}_{\mathbf{t}-1}-\boldsymbol{\alpha b} \mathbf{Y}_{\mathrm{t}-2}$ (equation for equilibrium)

With the help of preceding equation, the income level for past and future can be determined if the values of $a$ (i.e. $\alpha$ ), $b$ and income of two preceding years are given. It can be depicted from the preceding equation that the changes in income level can be affected by the values of $\alpha$ and b.

The different combinations of $\alpha$ and $b$ give rise to fluctuations in business cycles as shown in the following figure:


In the above Figure the areas $\mathrm{A}, \mathrm{B}, \mathrm{C}$, and D represents the different phases of business cycles. The types of different cycles represented by A, B, C, and D are described in detail with the help of the following points:
A: Refers to the area at which the income level increases or decreases at the decreasing rate and arrive at a new equilibrium point. The change in the income level would be in onedirection only.

It results in damped non-oscillation, as shown in Figure given below:


B: Refers to the area in which points, a (i.e. $\alpha$ ), and $b$, together makes amplitude cycles that gradually become smaller. This process continues till the cycles get dissolve and economy reaches to equilibrium. This represents damped oscillations, as shown in Figure given below:


C: Refers to the area in which points, a (i.e. $\alpha$ ) and $b$, together makes amplitude cycles that become larger. This forms explosive cycles, as shown in Figure given below


Representing Business Cycle Pattern in Area C
D: Refers to the area at which the income level is increasing or decreasing at the exponential rate. This process continues till cycles reach at the bottom. It represents one-way explosion and results in explosive oscillations, as shown in Figure given below.


E: Refers to the point at which the oscillations are of equal amplitude.

## Some of the drawbacks of Samuelson's model are as follows:

a. Represents a simpler model that is not able to explain business cycles completely
b. Ignores other factors that influence business cycles, such as expectations of businessmen and taste and preferences of customers
c. Assumes that the capital/output ratio remains constant, which is not true.

## 6. Hicks's Theory:

Hick's theory of business cycles is associated with the growth theory of Harrod-Domar. According to him, business cycles take place simultaneously with economic growth; therefore, business cycles should be explained in association with the growth theory.

In Hick's theory, the following concepts have been used to explain business cycles:
a. Saving-investment relation and multiplier concepts given by Keynes
b. Acceleration concept given by Clark
c. Multiplier-acceleration interaction concepts given by Samuelson
d. Growth model of Harrod-Domar

## Assumptions of Hick's theory:.

The important assumptions of Hicks's theory are as follows:
(a) Assumes an equilibrium rate of growth in a model economy where realized growth rate ( Gr ) and natural growth rate $(\mathrm{Gn})$ are equal. As a result, the increase in autonomous investment is constant and is equal to the increase in voluntary savings. The equilibrium growth rate can be obtained with the help of rate of autonomous investment and voluntary savings.
(b) Assumes the consumption function given by Samuelson, which is $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{t}}=\alpha \mathrm{Y}_{\mathrm{t}-1}$. As discussed earlier, according to Samuelson theory consumption takes place after a lag of one year. The time lag in consumption occurs due to the gap between income and expenditure and gap between Gross National Product (GNP) and non-wage income.

The gap between income and expenditure occurs when income is ahead of expenditure. The gap between GNP and non-wage income occurs when fluctuations in GNP occur more frequently than the fluctuations in non-wage income.

The saving function becomes the function of past year's income. With the time lag between income and investment-saving, the multiplier process has a diminishing impact on business cycles.
(c) Assumes that autonomous investment is a function of output at present. In addition, autonomous investment is used for replacing capital goods. However, induced investment is regarded as the function of changes in output.

The change in output leads to induced investment, which marks the beginning of the acceleration process. The acceleration process interrelates with the multiplier effect on income and consumption.
(d) Makes use of the words ceiling and bottom for explaining the upward and downward flow of business cycles. The ceiling on upward flow is a result of scarcity of resources required. On the other hand, the bottom on downward flow does not have a direct limit on contraction. However, an indirect limit is the effect of accelerator on depression.

## Hicks's theory can be explained with the help of Figure given below:



In the above Figure, the y -axis represents the logarithms of output and employment while x axis represents the semi-logarithm of time AA line represents the autonomous investment that is rising at the same rate. EE line shows the equilibrium line that is a multiple of autonomous investment. FF line expresses the full employment or the peak phase of economy, while LL line expresses the trough phase of an economy.

Hicks explains business cycles by assuming that the economy has reached to Po point of equilibrium path and autonomous investment is the result of innovation. The autonomous investment results in the increase of output.

Consequently, the economy moves upward from the equilibrium path. After a certain point of time, the autonomous investment brings the multiplier process at work, which further increases output and employment. The increased output makes the induced investment to work that further results in accelerator process to work.

The multiplier-accelerator interaction results in the growth of the economy. Consequently, the economy enters in the phase of expansion. The economy moves on the expansion path of $\mathrm{P}_{0} \mathrm{P}_{1}$. At point $\mathrm{P}_{1}$, the economy is in full employment condition. Now, the economy cannot grow further, it can only move on the FF line.

However, it cannot remain at FF line because autonomous investment becomes constant; therefore, now at FF, only the normal autonomous investment would be produced. This infers that the expansion of the economy is governed by induced investment only.

When the economy reaches to point $\mathrm{P}_{1}$, the increase in induced investment becomes stable and the growth of economy starts declining. This is because of the reason that the output produced at FF line is not sufficient for induced investment.

As a result the induced investment stops. The decline of the economy can be postponed, if the time lag between output and investment is of three to four years. However, the decline in output cannot be ceased. When the decline in output occurs at point P then the decline in output would continue till the economy reaches back to EE line.

After arriving at EE line, it would continue to fall further. The rate of decline in economy is very slow because disinvestment depends on the rate of depreciation. The decrease in output leads to the decline in the rate of depreciation.

The effect of reverse accelerator on the depression is not as frequent as in the case of expansion. During the path $\mathrm{Q}_{1} \mathrm{Q}_{2}$, the induced investment is nil while autonomous investment is less than normal. In addition, the indefinite decline of economy is represented by $\mathrm{Q}_{1 \mathrm{q}} \mathrm{q}$. However, $\mathrm{Q}_{1 \mathrm{q}}$ is a very rare case that does not occur normally.

When the economy reaches to trough, it moves along the LL line, which is associated with AA line that represents autonomous investment. Therefore, output starts increasing again with the increase in autonomous investment.

Increase in output makes the accelerator to work again. This phase is termed as recovery phase. Along with accelerator, multiplier also comes into action and their interaction makes economy run on the growth path and reaches to equilibrium EE line again.

## There are certain limitations of Hicks's theory, which are as follows:

a. Fails to explain the reasons for linear consumption function and constant multiplier. When the economy is going through different phases of business cycles, the income is redistributed that affects the marginal propensity to consume, which further affects the multiplier process.
b. Suspects the constancy of multiplier in changing economic conditions. Without empirical evidence, the accelerator and multiplier cannot be assumed to be constant.
c. Takes into consideration the abstract theory, which cannot be applied in the real world.

### 5.2.7 Summary

The cyclical fluctuations are inherent in the capitalist system and also found in mixed and other economic systems. The business cycle occurs in different phases and routed cyclically. There are various causes and effects of business cycle. There are different theories associated with the definition, causes, effects and remedies of business cycle. Some fluctuations may be beneficial for economic growth and others may be undesirable. Stabilization policy should, therefore, control undesirable fluctuations. The monetary policy and fiscal policy are the main measures to control business cycle. However, the problems of business cycle may not be eliminated completely.

### 5.2.8 Selected Questions

1. Define Business Cycle. Discuss its various phases.
2. Discuss the causes and effects of business cycle
3. Discuss the remedial measures of business cycle.
4. How the monetary policy and fiscal policy are useful to control business cycle.
5. Discuss in brief some of the important theories of business cycle.
